Trace metal variations through the Tartan and Waipawa formations: implications for the environment of deposition.

By:

Alexander T. Fuerst

A thesis submitted to the Victoria University of Wellington in partial fulfilment of the requirements for the degree of Master of Science in Petroleum Geoscience

Victoria University of Wellington, 2012.
Abstract

An inorganic geochemical study of the Late Paleocene organic matter-rich Waipawa and Tartan formations was undertaken in order to investigate the depositional environment. The formation varies in thickness between 2 and 50 metres and is distributed across many of New Zealand’s Cenozoic basins, where it forms an important potential hydrocarbon source rock. This study measured major and trace elements which can be loosely grouped into redox sensitive, biologically influenced, terrestrially sourced, and rare earth elements (REE). The study focused on three sections through the Waipawa and Tartan formations: Angora Quarry in the East Coast Basin, and the Great South Basin hydrocarbon exploration wells Kawau-1A and Pakaha-1.

At Angora Quarry, x-ray fluorescence (XRF) was used to measure the major constituents Na$_2$O, MgO, Al$_2$O$_3$, SiO$_2$, P$_2$O$_5$, SO$_3$, K$_2$O, CaO, TiO$_2$, MnO and Fe$_2$O$_3$. Inductively-coupled plasma mass spectrometry (ICP-MS) was used to measure Li, Ca, Ti, V, Cr, Co, Ni, Cu, Zn, Ga, Ge, As, Rb, Sr, Y, Zr, Nb, Mo, Cd, Sn, Sb, Ba, REE, Hf, Tl, Pb, Th and U.

For Pakaha-1 and Kawau-1A side wall core samples, ICP-MS was used to measure Ti, V, Cr, Mn, Co, Ni, Cu, As, Se, Rb, Sr, Y, Zr, Nb, Mo, Cd, Sn, Sb, Hf, Ta, W, Tl, Pb, Bi, Th and U. Insufficient sample was available for XRF on these samples.

No major changes in oxygen concentration during deposition were recorded by redox-sensitive elements from Angora Quarry and Pakaha-1 sediments; however samples from Kawau-1A and from a section 1 km upstream from Angora Quarry were deposited under somewhat oxygen-depleted conditions. As the anoxic and suboxic indicators show significantly lower variations than under present day anoxic environments, and in Angora Quarry CaO and SO$_3$ are significantly depleted with higher aluminosilicates a rapid deposition is required to explain the preservation of the organic matter. In the Great South Basin wells, the clay content correlates directly with increased gamma ray levels measured by well logs.

Increased influx of terrestrial clays has been linked to marine transgressions in many New Zealand sediments and is been taken to mean the same for the Waipawa and Tartan formations. The oxygen depletion indicates that water depths during deposition
exceeded 50 metres. The depositional model proposed here, therefore, is that of a major marine transgression that flooded and eroded near-shore swamps, re-depositing the terrestrial organic matter offshore. The increased nutrients released by this would have stimulated bioproductivity and locally, where conditions were suitable, depleted the oxygen content of the water column.

This study also suggests ternary diagrams are valuable for calculating the enrichment of elements affected by two processes, such as Sr, which is related to both detrital Al and related to biological Ca. Ga, Ba and Al content are also related on a ternary diagram indicating the similar terrestrial and biological relationships for Ba and Ga. W was found to behave in a similar way to Bi. Enrichment factors proved less useful than absolute enrichment for Kawau-1A, where detrital input varied greatly and was found to be significantly different in composition to average shale as defined by Wedephol (1971).
Acknowledgements

I would like first thank my supervisors, and acknowledge the input, Marc-Alban Millet for the geochemical aspects and the time and help you provided with the lab work and editing, and John Collen for this project, for your tireless editing, and for the weekly meeting that allowed me to bounce ideas off you regularly.

I am very grateful to OMV New Zealand Limited, both for the scholarship you provided and the employment during my thesis.

I’d like to thank Euen Smith for his help with ternary diagrams, Joel Rayen, for keeping me company during the fieldwork, and Harriette Mangin and Laura Campbell for the accommodation and company in Hastings during my fieldwork.

I am indebted to my family, my parents for their financial assistance and for being there through the many long years of study, and my sister for the countless times she has taken me out for dinner, you have helped keep me sane through these past few years.

To friends, many of whom I feel I’ve abandoned over the last few months, I apologise.
Table of contents

Abstract ........................................................................................................... i
Acknowledgements ....................................................................................... iii
Table of contents ............................................................................................ iv
Table of figures ................................................................................................ viii
Table of Tables ................................................................................................ xi

1. Introduction .................................................................................................. 1
   1.0. Introduction .............................................................................................. 1
   1.1. Introduction to the Waipawa and Tartan formations ................................ 2
       Waipawa Formation .................................................................................... 2
       Tartan Formation ....................................................................................... 3
       Distribution .................................................................................................. 3
       Gamma ray spike ........................................................................................ 5
       Nomenclature of the Waipawa Formation .................................................. 5
       Nomenclature of the Tartan Formation ...................................................... 6
   1.2. Previous work on the Waipawa and Tartan formations ......................... 6
   1.3. Introduction to anoxic environments and trace metal variations .......... 11
   1.4. Aim .......................................................................................................... 14
   1.5 Thesis outline ............................................................................................ 15

2. Trace metal variations ................................................................................... 16
   2.0. Processes governing trace metal variations in organic-rich sediments .... 16
   2.1 Different oxygen depleted environments and the representative
       enrichment processes .................................................................................. 18
       Closed oxygen depleted systems ............................................................... 19
       Silled anoxic basins .................................................................................. 20
       Marine upwelling ....................................................................................... 21
   2.2 Major and Trace element variations in sediments ................................... 23
       Mainly terrestrially sourced elements ......................................................... 24
       Indicators of anoxia (major components of sedimentary pyrite) ............... 26
       Indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite) .............................. 26
       Indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite); anthropogenic in recent
       sediments ................................................................................................. 27
       Biological component or involved in biocycling ....................................... 27
       Biological component or involved in biocycling. Indicators of anoxia (included
       in sedimentary pyrite) ............................................................................ 29
       Depleted under suboxic/dysoxic conditions. Indicators of anoxia (included in
       sedimentary pyrite) .................................................................................. 30
       Enriched under reducing conditions ......................................................... 30
       Enriched under reducing conditions, rarely studied ................................. 31
       Rarely studied in sediments ........................................................................ 32
       Rare earth elements (REE) ........................................................................ 32
3. Stratigraphy and regional setting

3.0. Regional setting

3.1. The East Coast Basin
   - Introduction
   - Stratigraphy
   - Whangai Formation
   - Waipawa Formation
   - Wanstead Formation

3.2. Great South Basin
   - Introduction
   - Stratigraphy
   - Wickliffe Formation
   - Tartan Formation
   - Laing Formation

4. Methods and field work

4.0. Introduction

4.1. East Coast Basin fieldwork and samples

4.2 Great South Basin
   - Pakaha-1
   - Kawau-1A

4.3. Laboratory techniques
   - Pre-laboratory sample preparation
   - Beaker cleaning
   - Sample digestion

4.4 Data Processing
   - Absolute concentration
   - Error calculations
   - Terrestrial background correction

5. Results

5.0. Angora Quarry
   - Overview
   - Major sedimentary components
   - Aluminium
   - Mainly terrestrial-sourced elements
   - Loss on ignition (LOI)
   - Indicators of anoxia (major components of sedimentary pyrite)
   - Indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite)
   - Indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite); *anthropogenic in recent sediments*
   - Biological component or involved in biocycling
   - Biological component or involved in biocycling; *indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite)*
   - Depleted under oxygen-depleted conditions; *indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite)*
   - Enriched under reducing conditions
   - Enriched under reducing conditions, *rarely studied*
   - Rarely studied in sediments
Rare earth elements (REE) ........................................................................................................ 75

5.0. Kawau-1A ......................................................................................................................... 77
   Overview .......................................................................................................................... 77
   Mainly terrestrially-sourced elements ............................................................................ 78
   Indicators of Anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite) .................................................. 79
   Indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite); *anthropogenic in recent sediments* .......................................................................................................................... 80
   Biological component or involved in biocycling ............................................................. 81
   Biological component or involved in biocycling; *indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite)* ....................................................................................................... 81
   Depleted under oxygen-depleted conditions; *indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite)* ........................................................................................................... 82
   Enriched under reducing conditions ............................................................................... 82
   Enriched under reducing conditions, *rarely studied* ..................................................... 83
   Rarely studied in sediments ............................................................................................ 84
   Rare earth elements (REE) ............................................................................................ 84

5.0. Pakaha-1 .......................................................................................................................... 85
   Overview .......................................................................................................................... 85
   Mainly terrestrially-sourced elements ............................................................................ 86
   Indicators of Anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite) .................................................. 87
   Indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite); *anthropogenic in recent sediments* .......................................................................................................................... 87
   Biological component or involved in biocycling ............................................................. 88
   Biological component or involved in biocycling; *indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite)* ....................................................................................................... 88
   Depleted under oxygen-depleted conditions; *indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite)* ........................................................................................................... 89
   Enriched under reducing conditions ............................................................................... 90
   Enriched under reducing conditions, *rarely studied* ..................................................... 91
   Rarely studied in sediments ............................................................................................ 91
   Rare earth elements (REE) ............................................................................................ 92

6. Discussion .......................................................................................................................... 94

6.0. Angora Quarry ................................................................................................................. 93
   Overview .......................................................................................................................... 93
   Terrestrial indicators ....................................................................................................... 96
   Anoxic indicators (sedimentary pyrite) .......................................................................... 97
   Oxygen depletion ............................................................................................................ 97
   Biological components and biocycling .......................................................................... 98
   Rare Earth Elements ....................................................................................................... 101
   Summary of Angora Quarry .......................................................................................... 101

6.1. Kawau-1A ......................................................................................................................... 102
   Overview .......................................................................................................................... 102
   Terrestrial indicators ....................................................................................................... 102
   Anoxic indicators (sedimentary pyrite) .......................................................................... 103
   Oxygen depletion ............................................................................................................ 104
   Biological components and biocycling .......................................................................... 104
   Rarely studied elements ............................................................................................... 105
   Rare Earth Elements ....................................................................................................... 105
   Summary of Kawau-1A ................................................................................................... 105

6.2. Pakaha-1 .......................................................................................................................... 106
   Overview .......................................................................................................................... 106
   Terrestrial indicators ....................................................................................................... 106
   Anoxic indicators (sedimentary pyrite) .......................................................................... 107
List of figures

Figure 1.1.1. Map showing known locations of the Tartan and Waipawa Formations. 4
Figure 1.1.2. Gamma ray log in the Kawau-1A well. 5
Figure 1.2.1. Sulphur plotted against TOC for the East Coast Basin. 8
Figure 1.2.2. Rock Eval data for the East Coast Basin. 9
Figure 1.2.3. Rock Eval data for the Great South Basin. 10
Figure 2.1.1. Diagram of a closed anoxic basin. 20
Figure 2.1.2. Diagram of a silled anoxic basin. 20
Figure 2.1.3. Diagram of upwelling-caused oxygen minimum layer. 22
Figure 3.0.1. Maps showing the evolution of the New Zealand continent 65Ma to 40Ma. 35
Figure 3.1.1. Generalised stratigraphy of the East Coast Basin. 36
Figure 3.2.1. Generalised stratigraphy of the Great South Basin. 39
Figure 4.1.1. Maps showing the location of Angora Quarry field area. 43
Figure 4.1.2. Simplified stratigraphy columns through the Angora Quarry and stream sections. 44
Figure 4.1.3. Photos of field samples at Angora Quarry. 45
Figure 4.1.4. Photos of *Terribelina* fossils in the samples. 45
Figure 4.1.5. Photos sorted by darkness for the Angora Quarry samples. 46
Figure 4.1.6. Photos sorted by darkness for the samples 1 km upstream from Angora Quarry. 46
Figure 4.2.1. Gamma ray log through Pakaha-1 with highlighted sample locations. 47
Figure 4.2.2. Gamma ray log through Kawau-1A with highlighted sample locations. 49
Figure 4.4.1. Raw ICP-MS measurements for Ca in field samples. 52
Figure 4.4.2. Raw ICP-MS measurements for Mo in field samples, showing problems caused by the BCR-2 standard. 53
Figure 4.4.3. Graph comparing local background element concentrations with that of average shale define by Wedephol (1971). 56
Figure 4.4.4. Depth section for As from Kawau-1A showing the difference between enrichment factor and absolute enrichment calculations. 58
Figure 4.4.5. Ternary diagram for CaO, Sr and Al$_2$O$_3$. 59
Figure 4.4.6. Synthetic perfect data for a CaO Sr and Al$_2$O$_3$ ternary diagram, before and after the detrital correction. 60
Figure 5.0.1. Graph showing the difference between Ca measured by ICP-MS and XRF for Angora Quarry. 63
Figure 5.0.2. Ternary diagrams showing the major sedimentary components: Al$_2$O$_3$, CaO and SiO$_2$ for the East Coast Basin. 64
Figure 5.0.3. A depth graph for Al$_2$O$_3$ at the Angora Quarry section. 65
Figure 5.0.4. Depth sections showing: absolute concentration, enrichment factors and absolute enrichments at Angora Quarry for TiO$_2$, Nb, Rb, K$_2$O, Th, Zr, Hf and Ga. 66
Figure 5.0.5. Depth sections showing: absolute concentration, enrichment factors and absolute enrichments at Angora Quarry for LOI. 67
Figure 5.0.6. Depth sections showing: absolute concentration, enrichment factors and absolute enrichments at Angora Quarry for Fe$_2$O$_3$ and SO$_3$. 67
Figure 5.0.7. Depth sections showing: absolute concentration, enrichment factors and absolute enrichments at Angora Quarry for Zn and Mo. 68
Figure 5.0.8. Depth sections showing: absolute concentration, enrichment factors and absolute enrichments at Angora Quarry for Pb. 68
Figure 5.2.5. Depth sections showing: absolute concentration, enrichment factors and absolute enrichments in Pakaha-1 for Sr.

Figure 5.2.6. Depth sections showing: absolute concentration, enrichment factors and absolute enrichments in Pakaha-1 for Tl, Cu, Cd and Ni.

Figure 5.2.7. A graph of Tl against Rb for Pakaha-1 samples.

Figure 5.2.8. Depth sections showing: absolute concentration, enrichment factors and absolute enrichments in Pakaha-1 for Mn and Co.

Figure 5.2.9. Depth sections showing: absolute concentration, enrichment factors and absolute enrichments in Pakaha-1 for As, U, V and Cr.

Figure 5.2.10. Depth sections showing: absolute concentration, enrichment factors and absolute enrichments in Pakaha-1 for Sb and Se.

Figure 5.2.11. Depth sections showing: absolute concentration, enrichment factors and absolute enrichments in Pakaha-1 for Sn and W.

Figure 5.2.12. Depth sections showing: absolute concentration, enrichment factors and absolute enrichments in Pakaha-1 for Y.

Figure 6.0.1. Depth sections showing TOC concentrations through Angora Quarry.

Figure 6.0.2. Al₂O₃ plotted against increasing darkness of sample.

Figure 6.0.3. CaO/Al₂O₃ plotted against increasing darkness of sample.

Figure 6.0.4. SiO₂/Al₂O₃ plotted against increasing darkness of sample.

Figure 6.0.5. Comparisons of Al₂O₃, Zr and Hf for Angora Quarry.

Figure 6.0.6. Depth sections through Angora Quarry for Ce/La and Gd/Eu.

Figure 6.0.7. Ternary diagram for data from Ross and Bustin (2009) for Ba, Ga and Al₂O₃.

Figure 6.0.8. S against TOC for the East Coast Basin, including this study.

Figure 6.1.1. Depth sections showing TOC in Kawau-1A.

Figure 6.2.1. Depth sections showing TOC in Pakaha-1.

Figure 6.3.1. Th plotted against Rb for the previous trace element work done in the East Coast Basin.

Figure 6.3.2. Sea level curve for the Late Paleocene with various age constraints for the Waipawa Formation.

Figure 6.4.1. Plot comparing the trace element concentration in oils sourced from the Waipawa Formation to the Waipawa Formation.
# List of tables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1.1</td>
<td>Depths and thicknesses of the Tartan Formation in the Great South and Canterbury basins.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.1</td>
<td>Descriptions of side wall core samples from Pakaha-1.</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.2</td>
<td>Descriptions of side wall core samples from Kawau-1A.</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4.1</td>
<td>Error calculations for Kawau-1A and Pakaha-1A.</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4.2</td>
<td>Error calculations for Angora Quarry.</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.0.1</td>
<td>Concentration of REE in Chondrite and North American Shale Composition (NASC).</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.0.1</td>
<td>Comparison of the correlation between terrestrial indicators at Angora Quarry.</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.1</td>
<td>Comparison of the correlation between terrestrial indicators at Kawau-1A.</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.1</td>
<td>Comparison of the correlation between terrestrial indicators at Pakaha-1.</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1.0. Introduction

This thesis is a study of the inorganic geochemistry of the Tartan and Waipawa formations. These units are important, their high organic-matter content makes them potential hydrocarbon source rocks, and for the unique yet regionally widespread facies they represent.

Late Paleocene and Early Eocene strata contain the record of some unique and short-lived global climatic events, amongst them the Paleocene carbon isotope maximum (PCIM) representing the increased burial of mainly terrestrial organic-carbon (e.g. Shackleton, 1987; Kurtz et al., 2003). The PCIM began around 59.5 Ma and lasted about 4 million years. It was followed immediately by the Initial Eocene Thermal Maximum (IETM) that lasted approximately 100,000 years. Sediments rich in organic matter were deposited in a number of basins around the world during the IETM (e.g. Gavrilov et al., 1997; Speijer et al., 1997), as a result of a maximum marine transgression, warm temperatures and a high influx of terrestrial organic matter into the oceans from flooding near shore swamps.

Around New Zealand, regionally extensive organic-matter rich sediments were deposited earlier during the PCIM (Hollis et al., 2005a); known as the Waipawa or Tartan formations dependant on locality.

While locally in New Zealand there are changes in lithology during the IETM (e.g. a marl-rich horizon, Nicolo et al., 2007), the Late Paleocene Waipawa and Tartan formations show more profound lithological changes and these occur in most New Zealand Cenozoic sedimentary basins (Killops et al., 2000). A Late Paleocene unconformity is also common above the Tartan and Waipawa formations (McMillan and Wilson, 1997) and in the Late Paleocene in general with the Waipounamu Erosion Surface (LeMasurier and Landis, 1996; Beggs, 2010a).

Around New Zealand many Cenozoic basins underwent significant marine
deposition during the Late Paleocene, yet most of these basins have minimal exposure onshore. Most of our information comes from the hydrocarbon exploration industry in the form of seismic surveys and exploration wells. The East Coast Basin is the exception, due to the recent activity of the Hikurangi subduction thrust, Early Cretaceous and younger sediments have been exposed from the East Cape in the north to Marlborough in the south (Field et al., 1997).

Organic-matter is mainly degraded through consumption by other life forms; this is enhanced by biological reworking due to the mixing of sediments (Demaison and Moore, 1980). To be preserved on a geological timescale organic-matter rich sediments must be deposited in and environment which is limited in the amount of life it can support during deposition to avoid degradation and recycling of the organic matter. A large influx of organic matter relative to the background detrital matter is also required to produce significant organic-matter enrichment. In marine environments the most common way to get high organic matter incorporated into sediments is under oxygen-depleted conditions, where the lack of oxygen limits life forms to sulphate and carbon-dioxide reducing bacteria (e.g. Demaison and Moore, 1980). Rapid deposition of recycled organic matter from another location may also be possible; however high organic matter influx can also drive anoxia as was shown to be the case in some Early Eocene organic-rich sapropels by Gavrilov et al. (1997) over a large area of southern Russia, adjoining regions of Crimea, to central and southern Asia. The effect of oxygen depletion limits processes such as bioturbation, which mixes the upper few cm of the sediments (Demaison and Moore, 1980). Under anoxic conditions (no oxygen) bacterial degradation is limited to CO$_2$, CH$_4$ and sulphate-reducing bacteria. However none of these are as efficient as aerobic (oxygen-reducing) life forms at recycling organic matter (e.g. Demaison and Moore, 1980).

1.1. Introduction to the Waipawa and Tartan formations

Waipawa Formation

The Waipawa Formation is an organic-rich Late Paleocene mudstone to siltstone
found in most New Zealand Cenozoic basins, excluding the Great South and Canterbury basins. The formation rarely exceeds 50 m in thickness, but averages 3.6 \% total organic carbon (TOC) and has a wide lateral distribution, making it an important potential hydrocarbon source rock (e.g. Katz, 1968; Hollis et al., 2005b). The type locality for the Waipawa Formation is located in the township of Waipawa (Moore et al., 1986).

**Tartan Formation**

In the Great South and Canterbury basins (Figure 1.1.1), a formation which is a similar facies to the Waipawa Formation, and the same age has been named ‘Tartan Formation’. The inability to show correlation across the Chatham Rise has led to the use of a different name (Cook et al., 1999; Schiøler et al., 2010). Cook et al., 1999 suggested Pakaha-1 as the type section between 2503-2551 m, however Schiøler et al., (2010) defined the Tartan Formation as 2515.2-2587.2 m in Pakaha-1. Whether this should be taken as the new type section is not yet clear.

**Distribution**

In the East Coast Basin the Waipawa Formation is identified throughout most of the basin (e.g. Moore, 1988); however, locally (e.g. Tawanui) a greensand unit in the uppermost Te Uri member of the Whangai Formation is demonstrated to be the time equivalent of the Waipawa (e.g. Rogers et al., 2001). Outside the East Coast, the Waipawa Formation has been identified in the Ariki-1 well in the northern Taranaki (Shell BP Todd Oil Services Ltd., 1984; Killops et al., 1994; King and Thrasher, 1996), in the Northland (Isaac et al., 1994; Conoco Northland Ltd, 1999; Hollis et al., 2006) and Westland (Nathan, 1977) basins. Its equivalent has also been suggested as being present in the Reinga Basin from seismic facies analysis (Stagpoole et al., 2009).

The Tartan Formation is has been identified in both the Great South and Canterbury basins (Killops et al., 1997, 2000; Cook et al., 1999; Schiøler et al., 2010). Figure 1.1.1 shows the known locations of the Waipawa and Tartan formations.

In the Great South and Canterbury basins there is no onshore exposure of the Tartan Formation; however it has been intersected in multiple hydrocarbon exploration
wells (table 1.1.1; figure 1.1.1). In the Great South Basin, four wells encountered the Tartan Formation (Kawau-1A, Pakaha-1, Hoiho-1C and Toroa-1). In Pukaki-1 an unconformity was recognised near the top of the Late Paleocene and the formation was interpreted to be missing (Cook et al., 1999). Recently the Tartan Formation was uncertain, see text.

Table 1.1.1: Depths and thickness of the Tartan Formation in the Great South and Canterbury basins wells. Depth is in meters below kelly bushing. Depths from Schiøler et al. (2010).

* Pukaki-1 may not actually contain the Tartan Formation, see text for details.
suggested as present (Schiøler and Roncaglia, 2008; Schiøler et al., 2010) based on cuttings and the well log signal, but this does not fit with the most recent seismic interpretation of reprocessed seismic data (ExxonMobil, 2010a, 2010b). As this well was not included in the present study, further discussing this issue is beyond the scope of this thesis.

**Gamma ray spike**

On well logs, the Tartan Formation coincides with a gamma ray spike which is considered one of the defining characteristics of the formation. The spike may be sourced from U-bearing organic matter, terrestrially derived clays, or both (Schiøler et al., 2010) or U salts precipitated due to oxygen depletion (Killops et al., 2000). An example of the gamma ray spike is shown for Kawau-1A (figure 1.1.2). Trace metals may be able to determine the source of the spike.

![Gamma ray log response in the Kawau-1A well. The units are in API; 100 API is the response of average shale. The Tartan Formation is highlighted in grey. Log data from Hunt International (1977).](image)

**Figure 1.1.2:** Gamma ray log response in the Kawau-1A well. The units are in API; 100 API is the response of average shale. The Tartan Formation is highlighted in grey. Log data from Hunt International (1977).

**Nomenclature of the Waipawa Formation**

The name “Waipawa” was first used in the literature by Finlay (1940) while discussing the distribution of Conotrochammina whangaia, a spiral foraminiferan
present in both the Whangai and the “Waipawa Black Shale”. However, the formation was not adequately described prior to Hornibrook and Harrington (1957), and first formally defined by Hornibrook (1959). Prior to 1957, depending on the region, the Waipawa Formation was included in the Whangai Formation, Mangatu Group or Wanstead Formation, or confused with Tapuwaeroa siltstone (Moore, 1988).

The Waipawa Formation was redefined by Moore (1986) as it was recognised as an important stratigraphic marker, and was deemed to be regionally significant. At the same time, the Wheturau Lithofacies from the Rakaurma Peninsula was recognised as a lateral continuation of the Waipawa Formation.

The Waipawa Formation is present in many New Zealand basins; however, the equivalents in the Canterbury and Great South basins have been given the name Tartan Formation by Cook et al. (1999). The reason for the different names is due to an inability to demonstrate that the formations can be correlated across the Chatham Rise.

**Nomenclature of the Tartan Formation**

While the Tartan Formation was referred to as the Waipawa Black Shale in several well reports (Kawau-1A, Hunt International, 1977; Pakaha-1, HIPCO, 1977a; Hoiho-1C, Hunt International, 1978), the interval was renamed by Cook et al. (1999) because of its wide geographic separation from the original Waipawa Formation and because unequivocal correlation between the basins could not be demonstrated.

**1.2. Previous work on the Waipawa and Tartan formations**

To date most studies of these formations have focused on palaeontology or organic or stable isotope geochemistry. A few studies have mapped the seismic extent (Field and Brown, 1989; Cook et al., 1999, Uruski et al., 2007; Stagpoole et al., 2009), and some major elements have been measured (Moore, 1988). Only one trace element study on the Waipawa Formation has been produced (Elgar, 1997); no such study has been undertaken on the Tartan Formation in the Great South Basin. There have also been several suggested depositional environments.

Hornibrook and Harrington (1957) suggested a shallow marine to estuarine...
environment of deposition based on difficulties in lateral paleontological correlation suggesting a more restricted environment than the open ocean; a shallow marine environment was later supported by Moore (1988) and Cook et al. (1999).

However a shallow marine environment would require a marine regression, which was suggested as unlikely due to the open marine nature of the underlying Whangai and overlying Wanstead formations, and a general marine transgression during the Late Paleocene (Killops et al., 2000). The presence of *Glomospira charoides* and *Rzehakina epigona* which are indicators of bathyal to abyssal depths, and the wide lateral extent of the Waipawa Formation and its equivalents make shallow marine environments unlikely (Killops et al., 1996, 2000). Hence a regional upwelling around Late Paleocene New Zealand was proposed by these authors. Oxygen-depleted water upwelling at the edge of the continental slope due to both prevailing westerly winds and changes in deep water circulation was suggested as the likely cause of anoxic conditions affecting the upper slope to shelf environment around New Zealand (Killops et al., 2000).

The presence of unusually abundant 24-n-propylcholestanes (Killops et al., 2000) was thought to be caused by enhanced bioproductivity, in particular of phytoplankton above the oxygen-minimum layer. A high sulphur measurement by Hirner and Robinson (1989) was interpreted as a potential indication of anoxic conditions (Killops et al., 2000). \( \text{H}_2\text{S} \) is only present in the water column in strongly anoxic conditions, (e.g. Berner, 1981), and is precipitated into pyrite through sulphate-reducing bacteria. When anoxic conditions occur on the water bottom or shallowest sediments the proximity to mobile water allows more access to nutrients and sulphate-reducing bacteria are able to precipitate more pyrite. If anoxic conditions only occur deep within the sediments, there is limited \( \text{H}_2\text{S} \) to be precipitated into pyrite.

Rogers (1995) and Elgar (1997) presented data of both total S and TOC in the Waipawa Formation as well as many other formations in the East Coast Basin (appendix A). TOC plotted against S allows you to differentiate terrestrial organic and marine organic matter as well as whether the depositional environment was anoxic (Leventhal, 1993). Terrestrial organic matter contains very little sulphur, whereas marine organic matter contains a larger proportion of sulphur, and anoxic environments through the precipitation of pyrite add more sulphur to the sediments. Figure 1.2.1 shows these results for TOC against S; the variation in the Waipawa Formation seen in figure 1.2.1
indicates the depositional environment cannot be as easily explained by purely anoxic conditions. A terrestrial component to the organic matter has also been widely recognised as one of the characteristics of the Waipawa and Tartan formations (e.g. Rogers, 1995, Elgar, 1997, Killops et al., 2000; Schiøler et al., 2010).

Schiøler et al. (2010) conducted a detailed palynofacies analysis of sidewall cores from directly above, below and through the Tartan Formation. From this, they identified a high percentage of brown phytoclasts, rare marine algae and amorphous organic matter, suggesting a mixture of marine and terrestrial kerogen, with a significant proportion of the kerogen of terrestrial origin. This was suggested to indicate a marginally marine environment of deposition with bottom waters varying between oxic and anoxic dependant on locality. Low abundances of foraminifera suggested a hyposaline proximal environment, existing during a time of maximum marine regression. The high terrestrial organic matter input was suggested to result from an influx of woody material from onshore, and the characteristic gamma ray spike identifying the Tartan Formation was potentially associated with terrestrial clays. The high influx of terrestrial matter potentially resulted in increased productivity in the water column and at the surface.

Rock Eval Pyrolysis studies performed on the Waipawa and Tartan formations
measured the source rock properties (figure 1.2.2; 1.2.3), indicating whether they are oil or gas prone amongst other things. The hydrogen index (HI) is an indicator of the amount of hydrogen is available for the production of hydrocarbons - the higher the hydrogen index, the more oil prone a formation is.

In the East Coast Basin (figure 1.2.2) a large variation in all source rock properties is observed. The formation varies between being oil, oil and gas, and gas prone, as does the Whangai Formation.

The Tartan Formation in the Great South Basin (figure 1.2.3) shows less variation in the HI values, but whether this is due to a limited number of samples analysed or a more homogenous unit in the Great South Basin is unknown.

The Schjøler et al. (2010) model is able to explain the distribution and the variation in the organic geochemistry of the Tartan Formation (figure 1.2.3). However,
the East Coast Basin samples of the Waipawa Formation show a greater variation in kerogen types (figure 1.2.2) and there is evidence from sulphur and TOC that at some locations the Waipawa Formation consists largely of marine organic matter (figure 1.2.1). The Waipawa Formation is also not as thick, averaging 17 m (Hollis et al., 2005b) whereas the Tartan formation is on average 34 m thick (Schiøler et al., 2010). Waipawa Formation has also been linked to isotopically light liquid crude oil (Killops et al., 1994; Rogers et al., 1999) that is characteristic of marine, not terrestrial organic-matter. An explanation for fully marine organic-matter in some locations of the Waipawa Formation is not addressed by the Schiøler et al., (2010) model.

**Figure 1.2.3:** Rock Eval results from for SWC samples in the Great South Basin. Aside from samples for which no more material is available, the red and blue SWC samples are the same as were used in this study. Figure edited from Schiøler et al. (2010).
Elgar (1997) conducted the first trace element measurements on the Waipawa Formation in the East Coast Basin. The study, however, was a regional study and no detailed sections were examined through the Waipawa Formation. This study will be addressed later.

1.3. Introduction to Anoxic Environments and Trace Metal Variations

Due to differing definitions of the terms ‘anoxic,’ ‘dysoxic,’ ‘suboxic’ and ‘oxic’ in the literature, it is important to first determine which set of definitions are used to describe the different environments in this and subsequent chapters. Multiple attempts at providing terminology have been made (e.g. Rhoads and Morse, 1971; Berner, 1981; Tyson and Pearson, 1991), while some early authors set their own boundaries for anoxic conditions (e.g. Demaison and Moore, 1980 at 0.5ml/L). Tyson and Pearson (1991) attempted to come up with a universal system in response to the multiple terminologies already in use. However, presently the literature remains confused.

Tyson and Pearson (1991) suggested oxic as 8.0-2.0ml/L (O₂), dysoxic as 2.0-0.2ml/L, suboxic as 0.2-0.0 ml/L and anoxic as 0.0ml/L, with the latter also characterised by the presence of H₂S. Corresponding biofacies were defined as: aerobic, dysaerobic, quasi-anaerobic, and anaerobic. This study will use these terminologies and where possible will apply these terms to the interpretation of previous literature. The main issues occur in the exchangeable use of dysoxic and suboxic across the literature, and the definition of anoxic as varying between 0.5 ml/L and 0.0 ml/L. The presence of H₂S is not always treated as the defining factor for anoxic conditions, however, H₂S can only exist in the absence of oxygen (Berner, 1981).

An oxygen-depleted environment is important for the preservation of organic carbon, and 80% of the world’s hydrocarbon source-rocks are thought to be deposited under oxygen depleted regimes (Tyson and Pearson, 1991). Increased primary productivity (Pedersen and Calvert, 1990) or increases in rates of deposition (Lee, 1992)
can also lead to the enhanced preservation of organic matter. Under laboratory conditions the rates of organic matter degradation may show little difference between oxic and anoxic environments (Lee, 1992; Henrichs and Reeburgh, 1987; Westrich and Berner, 1984; Otsuki and Hanya 1972a, b). However, over longer time scales under oxygen-depleted conditions there is a less chemical energy available for life, and hence less organic-matter degradation (Demaison and Moore, 1980; Berner, 1981; Lee, 1992).

Anoxic conditions occur in most sediments during some stage of diagenesis (Demaison and Moore, 1980; Berner, 1981; Tyson and Pearson, 1991); however when the water column is stratified, anoxic conditions can occur at the sediment-water interface or in the lowermost water column (Tyson and Pearson, 1991). Oxygen depletion in the water column does not need to be stable throughout the year, and seasonal oxygen depletions can occur in situations where the water column is only seasonally stratified.

Trace metal variations in organic-matter rich sediments have been studied for many years with one of the earliest studies being that by Goldschmit (1954). Some earlier studies have noted the relationship between black shales and particular trace metals; for example, McKelvey and Nelson (1950) discussed the enrichment of U and depletion of Mn in black shales. Since these early studies the understanding of trace metal distributions has increased, as has the precision with which trace metals can be measured. The environments in which organic-rich rocks are deposited are now also better understood. While there are still many gaps in our understanding of trace metals in sediments, many enrichment processes are well known and can be used to help constrain the environments of deposition and the palaeoceanic conditions.

The concentration of trace metals in organic matter-rich sediments varies due to several different processes. The detrital sediment source provides a background amount of trace metals. If there is a variation in sediment source or there is some sediment sorting which increases or decreases particular mineral abundances, then the background detrital input can contain trace metal variations (Dellwig et al., 2000; Brumsack, 2006). Biological processes in the water column can collect particular elements from seawater, and the preservation of the resulting organic matter can give a biological enrichment. At the sediment-water interface biological processes (bioturbation) can disturb the sediments, causing the water to be mixed within the upper
layer of sediments. This is most common in oxic conditions and helps provide an oxidising environment to the upper sediments (Demaison and Moore, 1980).

Diagenetic processes affect trace elements concentrations. Diagenetic processes start after deposition, and hence include all processes which occur at and below the sediment-water interface. Many of the processes related to oxygen concentration are diagenetic when the correct conditions occur below the sediment-water interface. Diagenetic processes which occur at later stages may affect trace metals, but their influences are poorly understood. These processes include changes in the bulk composition of the sediments, such as cementation and dissolution, that may affect trace metal concentrations if the cement is externally sourced or the dissolved material moves into other formations. With heat and pressure, organic matter-rich rocks expel oil and gas. The extent to which this affects trace metal concentrations is unknown, although Ross and Bustin (2009) measured trace metal in thermally mature shales and noted that trace metals were still enriched. Without comparable studies of otherwise identical immature and mature source rocks, the quantitative effects of hydrocarbon generation on trace metal concentrations and expulsion are unknown.

Trace metals can be enriched under oxygen depleted conditions through either direct precipitation as governed by redox chemistry, or indirectly through inclusions of trace amounts of an element within precipitating minerals such as sulphates and phosphates. Direct precipitation is relatively well understood and there are chemical formulae for the enrichment or depletion of several elements. The indirect precipitation method is more complex and depends on many factors such as the minerals precipitating (most commonly pyrite) and the trace elements present in the water column (e.g. Brumsack, 2006). As these methods affect different elements it is important to separate them.

Frankenberger (1994) measured the trace metal content of oils which were subsequently linked to the Waipawa Formation and underlying Whangai Formation due to biomarker content (Rogers et al., 1999, Killops et al., 1994). Whether or not these oils contain significant concentrations of trace metals in relation to the Waipawa Formation or underlying Whangai Formation will be investigated in this study.
1.4. Aim.

The primary aim of this study is to review the depositional environment of the Tartan and Waipawa Formations using trace metal variations.

- Determine if there is evidence for anoxic, suboxic or oxic conditions during deposition of the Tartan and Waipawa Formations.
- Measure elements related to biological activity in the Tartan and Waipawa Formations and see if any conclusions can be drawn from such elements.
- Use S measurements from this study and TOC (from Leckie (1992) to identify if the organic matter present in the Waipawa Formation is of terrestrial or marine origin.
- Determine whether there are any changes in sediment source evident within the detritally sourced elements.
- Review the literature of the Tartan and Waipawa formations and determine whether our data agrees with the current depositional models.
- Review whether other depositional models can also be reconciled to the same data.

The secondary aim of this thesis is to review the science behind trace element variations in sediments to assess whether this technique is appropriate for answering the primary goals and to help improve the science behind trace element variations.

- Review whether using the average shale standard is appropriate for understanding the trace element variations in this study.
- Review which methods of reducing the trace element data is the most appropriate for our data sets.
- Determine whether other methods of data reduction can be developed for more complex elements e.g. Sr, Mg.
- Measure a variety of elements which have not been previously measured or have been excluded from previous studies.
- Compare elemental measurements in the Tartan and Waipawa Formation to the TM concentrations previously measured in oils sourced from the
1.5 Thesis outline

Chapter two summarises different environments and processes which affect trace element composition, and provides a comprehensive summary of sedimentary geochemistry on different elements.

Chapter three builds on the introduction to the Waipawa and Tartan formations presented in the introduction chapter, describing both the tectonic setting and the units surrounding the formations.

Chapter four is the methods chapter. It discusses the field work, describes the samples, the methods of preparation, the measurement of the samples, the data processing, and the measurement errors.

Chapter five presents the results of the study one field site at a time, and the results are presented in the same order as the trace metals are described in chapter two.

Chapter six discusses the results, and integrates the results into previous work. The first three sections of the discussion deal with the individual field sites, the following two deal with first the depositional environment and then the implications the results have on the science of trace metal accumulation in sediments.

Chapter seven summarises the conclusions of the study, dealing first with the different field sites, then depositional environments, trace element science, and finally future work.
Chapter 2

Variations in Trace Metals

2.0. Processes governing trace metal variations in organic-rich sediments

Variations in trace metal concentration in organic-rich sediments have been studied by many authors (e.g. Brumsack; 2006 and references therein), and for some elements the reasons for enrichment or depletion are well known (e.g. Al, Ti, V, Mn, Co and Mo). Some elements are often not measured due to various reasons including difficulty in measuring the elements (e.g. W).

Some processes occur in the water column, others occur below the sediment-water interface. Processes which occur below the sediment-water interface are known as diagenetic processes and can be divided into two groups: early and late stage processes. The early stage diagenetic processes occur in the upper few metres of the sediments, while late stage ones which include oil generation and expulsion occur at greater depths of burial. The effects of the processes on bulk rock concentrations occurring below the sediment-water interface are limited by the amounts of trace metals supplied or removed by moving water or fluids. As sediments are increasingly buried, the amount of water which cycles through the system is reduced, limiting the external supply and removal of trace elements, (reduced mass transfer). However enrichment and depletion processes still occur, as mudrocks often act as open systems that allow for exchange of material between adjacent sedimentary units (e.g. Bloch and Hutcheon, 1992; Abanda and Hannigan, 2006).

Variations in the concentration of oxygen in the water column and in the pore spaces during early diagenesis can directly cause the precipitation of elements (e.g. Brumsack, 2006), as oxygen is important in determining the oxidation state of many elements. Oxidation-reduction reactions (redox) are equilibrium reactions in chemistry which are highly dependent on the oxygen content of the water.

Redox reactions have two parts; an oxidation part, which is the loss of an electron
causing an increase of the oxidation state of the element, and reduction, the gain of an electron giving a decrease in the oxidation state of an element. In marine conditions, water can act as either the oxidant under oxic conditions, or the reductant in oxygen-depleted conditions. For many elements, the oxidation state of the element can govern whether the element is more stable in a solid or an aqueous phase. Elements which are enriched in sediments deposited under oxygen-depleted conditions include V and Cr, while elements such as Mn and Co are depleted from the sediments under these conditions.

The process of redox enrichment and depletion becomes more complicated when elements are readily included in a mineral which is precipitating due to change in redox conditions but is formed largely from other elements. While many minerals can precipitate under anoxic conditions, those with the greatest effects on other trace metals are sulphides, generally present in the form of sedimentary pyrite. This process occurs only in anoxic conditions, due to the requirement for dissolved H\textsubscript{2}S to be present in the water column. Under anoxic conditions H\textsubscript{2}S, together with Fe, is precipitated as various forms of sedimentary pyrite. The concentration of sulphur in sediments which are deposited under anoxic conditions is often several orders of magnitude higher than the concentration of many other redox-sensitive trace elements and higher than its concentration in oxic sediments (e.g. Leventhal 1983; 1993; Brumsack, 2006). The processes involved in the precipitation of pyrite often involve traces of other elements and for of the latter elements this may be the dominant enrichment process (Brumsack, 2006).

Many elements are enriched in living organisms; for example, Cd is involved in plankton growth (Calvert and Pedersen, 1993). Elements which are included in organisms, though, are not always represented to the same extent in the rock. Although enrichments can occur through the burial of dead organic matter, the amount and degree of degradation of the organic matter is important to the direct biological enrichment process. Elements which are included into the tests of the organisms are generally more likely to be preserved (Brumsack 2006). Other forms of biological enrichments occur where the biological processes change an element from an aqueous phase into a solid phase. Under sulphur-rich conditions anaerobic bacteria which respirate H\textsubscript{2}S often produce metal sulphides such as pyrite (e.g. Vernadsky et al., 1998; Brüchert et al.,
Late stage diagenetic processes such as mechanical compaction which expel pore water, alteration and dissolution of minerals, precipitation of clays with material sourced from adjacent units, and hydrocarbon expulsion affect the overall composition of the rocks and/or pore fluids, and hence may have a significant affect on the concentration of trace elements. The effects of these are currently not well understood and there have been few studies to quantify the variations due to such diagenetic effects. Sufficient trace elements are preserved in sediments which have undergone late stage diagenesis that the enrichments can be measured (e.g. Abanda and Hannigan, 2006; Ross and Bustin, 2009), but before any studies beyond qualitative trace element work can be undertaken on ancient sediments, these processes need to be better understood and the effects quantified. Abanda and Hannigan (2006) suggested that in particular oil generation may have an effect on black shale composition as large amounts of elements (e.g. S, P, Tl, Cd, and Cu), are associated at least partially with the organic fraction of the rocks.

For most elements, understanding of the main enrichment processes is still at an early stage. Whether and/or how different processes interact with one another and with parameters such as salinity, sedimentation rate, and temperature is uncertain. This makes quantitative studies even of recent sediments difficult. For ancient sediments, additional factors such as unknown concentrations of elements in sea water at the time of deposition and the uncertainty of the processes controlling late stage diagenesis have made the interpretation of trace element enrichments in ancient sediments more qualitative than quantitative.

2.1. Different oxygen depleted environments and the representative enrichment processes

There are several different types of oxygen-depleted environments present in nature and preserved in the geological record. The combinations of physical, biological and chemical conditions and processes in these environments can cause variations in
trace metal abundance. While some anoxic environments persist for geological periods, others occur only briefly. The latter include environments which are seasonally anoxic, such as upwellings caused by changes in prevalent winds causing oxygen depletion and stratification of the water column during part of the year (e.g. Tyson and Pearson, 1991).

The oxidation of sediments which were deposited under oxygen-depleted conditions can reverse many of the processes which caused the elemental enrichments. Such oxidation can occur in seasonally anoxic regions or during sediment re-suspension. Morse (1994) showed that anoxic sediments when exposed to oxic conditions for even a day can lose from 20% to over 90% of pyrite-bound metals. Other enrichments, as well as the release of pyrite-bound elements, can also be reversed by exposure to oxic conditions.

Different oxygen-depleting environments occur in different geographic locations. Although not all environments can be differentiated by trace metal variations, several major ones can (Brumsack, 2006). Some of the major oxygen-depleting environments are:

**Closed oxygen-depleted systems**

Closed, oxygen-depleted systems (figure 2.1.1) are generally lakes which have water flowing into the lake but none leaving. Water is only removed through evaporation. Trace metals are not evaporated into the atmosphere and hence any that are introduced either by inflowing water or leached from sediments will be included into the sediments, within either the oxic or anoxic parts of the lake.

The classic example of an anoxic lake with no outflow is the Dead Sea. This is situated at 410m below sea level in the Dead Sea rift valley. The sediments in the Dead Sea were studied by Herut et al. (1997) in respect to trace metal variations. Lateral trace metal variations were detected and related to detrital input. Brumsack (2006) included the Black Sea in an attempt at differentiating different oxygen-depleted environments, using enrichment factors calculated with respect to average shale as defined by Wedepohl (1971). The use of this technique will be discussed in section 4.4.

In closed oxygen-depleted systems, H₂S is often present making the closed systems “anoxic” under the Tyson and Pearson (1991) classification system (e.g.
Brumsack, 2006). When there is insufficient Fe in the system pyrite precipitation may not occur or be limited, hence much of the trace metal enrichment which involves the precipitation of pyrite may also be limited below the oxic-anoxic boundary.

Silled anoxic basins

Silled anoxic basins (figure 2.1.2) differ mainly from closed anoxic basins in that water and trace metals can be cycled through the system as it is not completely isolated.

Figure 2.1.2: Diagram of a silled anoxic basin where water flows both in and out of the basin but a physical barrier prevents mixing of the entire water column, and a positive net water balance generates a salinity contrast preventing vertical mixing. See text for explanation of the different processes. Figure based on Demaison and Moore (1980) and Brumsack (2006).
This ability to cycle water through the system allows trace metals which are more stable in solution under reduced conditions to be removed from the sediments into the water, while those which are more stable in a solid state are enriched to a greater degree than in a closed system.

The redox states of elements along with their residence times in both anoxic and oxic waters are important in silled anoxic basins. The enrichments in the silled anoxic basins are dependent on the net inflow of water, the net outflow, the cycling of water within the basin, the sedimentation rate, and the trace metal concentration in the water.

**Marine upwelling**

Another source of oxygen depletion is from upwelling deep sea waters. Upwelling is generally driven either by ocean currents or wind, causing deep nutrient-rich, oxygen-poor bottom waters to rise along the continental slope. While life exists at all levels of the oceans, the main primary productivity occurs in the photosynthetic zone (e.g. Tyson and Pearson, 1991). The nutrient-rich water stimulates life in the photosynthetic zone, recycling dead organic-matter and creating a high demand for oxygen, thus depleting the oxygen and causing the formation of an oxygen-minimum layer (Figure 2.1.3; Demaison and Moore, 1980). At the surface oxygen is again mixed into the water from the atmosphere.

The oxygen-minimum layer must be at sufficient depth that oxygen is not mixed in by wave action, and stratification through changes either in salinity or temperature of the water column is often necessary. The thickness of the oxygen minimum layer can vary greatly, and in some situations can be only the bottom few centimetres of the water-column (Tyson and Pearson, 1991).

For trace metal variations there are two main denominations of upwellings as summarised by Brumsack, (2006) and depicted in figure 2.1.3. A narrow shelf will generally have dysoxic conditions at the sediment-water interface as the water cycles through too quickly for anoxic conditions to build up. There is, however, a vast quantity of water which cycles through and a large amount of primary productivity in upwelling situations, providing both abundant trace metals to be reduced into the sediments and a
A) Upwelling on a narrow shelf

B) Upwelling on an extended shelf

Figure 2.1.3: Diagram of upwelling producing an oxygen-minimum layer on a) a narrow shelf, and b) an extended shelf. Extended shelves can have anoxic conditions while a narrow shelf generally has dysoxic or suboxic conditions. Figure based on Demaison and Moore (1980) and Brumsack (2006).

large influx of organic-matter. On an extended shelf the main difference is that anoxic conditions can occur just above the sediment-water interface and thus pyrite can often be precipitated.

The overall variation in trace elements between different types of upwelling environments is dependent on whether or not H₂S is present, the amount of water cycled through, the rate of deposition, the trace metals present in the water column, and the amount and type of productivity above and within the oxygen-depleted layer as well as in the top few cm of sediments.
Dysoxic and suboxic conditions above the sediment-water interface are indicators that the environment is likely to be that of an upwelling, while anoxic conditions may be present in both basins or upwellings or on extended shelves. Trace element concentrations alone cannot always be used to differentiate between these environments, especially when applied to ancient environments where some elements may be an order of magnitude more or less abundant than that observed in modern environments. This was found to be the case by Brumsack (2006) when applied to Cretaceous black shales, where Zn and Ag were found to be an order of magnitude more abundant than in modern environments.

2.2 Major and Trace element variations in sediments

The large number of elements examined in the present study have been grouped where possible, by their behaviour in marine conditions, and results are presented in the same order for each of the field sites in both the results and discussion sections, a tabulated summary of trace metal variations is provided in Appendix D. Many elements are affected differently by multiple processes and hence could not always be grouped together.

Many elements in silicate sediments are affected by changes in provenance where different mineral assemblages of the detrital elements have differing concentrations of elements. Variations in other elements such as sulphur are related to organic matter and oceanographic conditions the details of these processes are covered later in this chapter. The bulk composition of marine shales is often characterised by three end members: silica in detrital quartz, aluminium in the clay fraction and calcite in the carbonate content. As these elements are normally measured using XRF, the oxides measured are: SiO$_2$, Al$_2$O$_3$ and CaO. Ternary diagrams of these oxides are often produced to show major differences in depositional environments (e.g. Brumsack, 1989). Major changes in depositional and paleoceanographic conditions, especially with respect to sediment source, sorting, rate of deposition and biological input are all likely to have some affect on these three end members and may hence aid in differentiating sediments.
However, treating sediments as consisting of these three end members alone is a simplification. SiO$_2$ is included in some biological tests (e.g. diatoms, radiolarians, some foraminifera) and in many clay minerals, and CaO is also included in detrital clays. The overlap of several processes affecting these elements in different sediments are often negligible unless dealing with extreme environments where one or more of these processes is absent or very minor.

**Mainly terrestrially-sourced elements**

Aluminium is a structural component of many silicate minerals (e.g. Dean *et al.*, 1997), and generally makes up several weight percent of marine shales. The concentration of Al in seawater is generally very low (Orians and Bruland, 1986; Brown *et al.*, 1989); however, abundance can vary considerably. For example, while the Pacific Ocean contains between 2.7 and 135 ppt (parts per trillion) of Al, the Mediterranean has values two orders of magnitude higher (Orians and Bruland, 1986). Compared to the concentration in shales (average shale as defined by Wedepohl (1971) contains 16.7% Al$_2$O$_3$), concentrations in the ocean are very small. Due to the large amount of Al in detrital clays and the relatively insignificant amounts introduced into shales from other sources, Al is generally used to correct trace element concentrations in shales for their detrital input (e.g. van der Weijden, 2002). At Palmyra Atoll, an isolated carbonate environment where terrestrial clays are insignificant, sediments contain around 4-5 orders of magnitude less Al in both anoxic and oxic sediments than average shale (Collen J.D. *pers. com.* 2010), supporting the observation that Al variations are mainly controlled by terrestrial clay content.

Titanium is mainly introduced through detrital minerals. However, the Al/Ti ratio can also be used as an indicator of increased energy within the depositional environment as Ti is enriched in heavy mineral phases such as rutile, requiring more energy to move relative to other minerals of similar size but lower mass (Dellwig *et al.*, 2000).

Potassium varies little in anoxic sediments; however, variations of K/Al or K/Si are used as indicators of changes in provenance or sediment sorting, or with K/Si can indicate a dilution by biological Si (Wehausen and Brumsack, 2002; Brumsack, 2006). Illite content has been shown to have a major control on the amount of K in sediments (Yarincik *et al.*, 2000; Ross and Bustin, 2008, 2009), and changes in detrital elements
such as K-feldspar would have a similar affect. K also exists in some forms of
glaucnite, which may be relevant for this study.

Rubidium does not vary significantly in sediments due to oceanographic
conditions as it is related to K in the lithosphere (Plank and Langmuir, 1998) and also
generally behaves like other terrestrially sourced elements e.g. Zr, Hf and Nb. Although
Rb is often measured, mechanisms for its enrichment in sediments have not been
suggested and it is generally considered an element which can be used as a proxy for
detrital input. Ross and Bustin (2009) showed little variation of Rb in a Devonian-
Mississippian shale sequence in western Canada, with an enrichment factor of close to
one.

Thorium is introduced to sediments mainly through detrital components but is
often enriched in the presence of Fe-Mn oxyhydroxides, Th is also absorbed into
suspended particulate matter, which is at equilibrium with the surrounding water
column (Plank and Langmuir, 1998; Bacon and Anderson, 1982). However, Th in the
water column is 6 orders of magnitude less abundant than in average shale (Brown et
al., 1989; Wedepohl, 1971); hence Th generally behaves as a detrital element and any
variation which occurs due to other processes is generally smaller than measurement
errors.

Hafnium, Nb, Zr and Ta are elements which have rarely been measured in
sedimentary rocks, and no enrichments have been noted. They are also elements which
are immobile and not affected by diagenetic, redox or weathering processes (e.g. Ross
and Bustin, 2009). The natural sea water concentration of these elements (Brown et al.,
1989) varies between 2 (Ta) and 30 (Zr) ppt, while average shale varies between 2 (Ta)
and 160 (Zr) ppm (Wedepohl 1971). Hence, oceanic conditions are largely insignificant
in controlling their abundances in sediments with a large detrital fraction.

Gallium is generally considered to behave similarly to other detrital elements, and
Staubwasser and Sirocko (2001) used it as an indicator of detrital input. Few studies
have included Ga, although that of Ross and Bustin (2009) on a Canadian Devonian-
Mississippian shale sequence showed very little variation in Ga from its abundance in
average shale.
Indicators of anoxia (major components of sedimentary pyrite)

Iron is present in several forms; it makes up a structural component of many grains, and is also common as an Fe oxide/hydroxide coating on grains. In upwelling environments Fe can be depleted as it is stable in water in its reduced form. In the presence of \( \text{H}_2\text{S} \), Fe combines with S to form pyrite. The amount of \( \text{H}_2\text{S} \) which is precipitated into pyrite in anoxic conditions is mainly dependent on the amount of Fe in the water column (Canfield et al., 1992; Brumsack, 2006).

Sulphur is generally enriched in organic matter-rich sediments (e.g. Brumsack, 2006). Sulphur is enriched in two ways, the first being a directly included into marine organic matter, and the second being the precipitation of pyrite under anoxic conditions (e.g. Leventhal, 1983; Raiswell and Berner, 1985). Pyrite precipitation generally occurs through heterotrophic bacteria (bacteria that respirate sulphur) reducing sulphur from sulphate into metallic sulphide and hydrogen sulphides (e.g. Vernadsky et al., 1998; Brüchert et al., 2003). In the presence of Fe in the water-column the sulphates are precipitated into pyrites; however, when Fe is not present or only present in insufficient amounts, out-gassing of \( \text{H}_2\text{S} \) can occur from the sediments (Chapman and Shannon, 1985; Weeks et al., 2004).

Many elements are included into pyrite precipitates; however, there are several different types of sedimentary pyrites, and it has been suggested that some can form in dysoxic conditions and will hence contain different trace metal concentrations (Tribovillard et al., 2008). Many elements which are included in sedimentary pyrite as traces are also affected by other processes. Associated with biological conditions are S, Tl, Cu, Cd and Ni, depleted under oxygen-depleted conditions are Mn, Co and Bi, and complicated by anthropogenic input are Pb and Bi. These elements have been grouped into different subsections in this chapter to discuss these other processes along with the inclusion into pyrite.

Indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite)

Zinc is enriched in oxygen-depleted environments. Calvert and Pedersen (1993) suggested that it is mainly enriched as part of sulphide precipitation.

Molybdenum is a highly studied trace metal in anoxic sediments. It is found to be
strongly enriched, and usually included in sulphides (e.g. Elbaz-Poulichet et al., 2005). Mo is enriched in both upwellings (e.g. Böning et al., 2004) and anoxic basins (Elbaz-Poulichet et al., 2005). MoO$_4^{2-}$ is diffused into sediments forming MoS$_4^-$ (Erickson and Helz, 2000) and then later forms Mo-Fe-S cuboidal clusters on pyrite, from which it is reduced to Mo(VI) to stabilise the structure (Vorlicek et al., 2004). Crusius et al. (1996) found that enrichment of Mo begins at ~1cm below the sediment water interface in anoxic environments, and at >10cm in sub-oxic to oxic environments.

**Indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite); anthropogenic in recent sediments**

Lead is generally related to sulphur in anoxic sediments (Heinrich et al., 1980) and has a short residence time in the ocean (less than a century) (e.g. Schaule and Patterson, 1981). The residence time is likely to be due to lead being rapidly scavenged by biogenic particles (Brumsack, 1989; Böning et al., 2004). In modern sediments any enrichment due to anoxia is comparably less than the enrichments due to anthropogenic input (Böning et al., 2004).

The concentration of Bi in upwelling zones is more closely related to sulphur abundance than organic carbon (Heinrich et al., 1980; Bertine et al., 1996), but the exact removal pathways are not yet fully understood (Brumsack, 2006). Understanding of the enrichment of Bi in recent sediments is hindered by enhanced anthropogenic input from mining (Böning et al., 2004, 2009). Bi is also enriched in ferromanganese phases in marine conditions, and hence is often reduced into an aqueous phase in other oxygen-depleted conditions (Bertine et al., 1996).

**Biological component or involved in biocycling**

Barium has been considered a potential proxy for bio-productivity (Schmitz, 1987; Dymond et al., 1992; Prakash Babu et al., 2002). However, it undergoes complex reactions and may be related to water depth (e.g. von Breymann et al., 1992). Ross and Bustin (2009) found little variation in the enrichment factor of Ba in Devonian-Mississippian shales in the Western Canadian Sedimentary Basin, suggesting that in their study Ba it was largely of detrital origin. The Ba content from different terrigenous
backgrounds is known to vary, and local corrections for detrital Ba were suggested by Klump et al. (2000) in order to avoid using a Ba/Al ratio which doesn’t reflect local sediments. Ba is found to be stable only when there is sulphur in the water column (Church and Wolgemuth, 1972). In environments where the sulphur has been reduced into solid form by heterotrophic organisms (pyrite precipitation), Ba is mobile and hence not included in sediments (Brumsack, 2006; Brumsack and Gieskes, 1983; McManus et al., 1998). There has thus been caution in the use of Ba as an indicator of either bio-productivity or water depth for sediments which were deposited under anoxic conditions.

Calcium is generally present in marine shales, mostly carbonate shells. Ca from other sources is normally minor in comparison (e.g. Brumsack, 2006). Dissolution of Ca in the water column can occur, although the rates of dissolution are slow (e.g. Peterson, 1966). Calcite dissolution can also occur in the upper sediments. Dissolution is generally more extensive in more highly bioturbidated areas where alkalinity buildup from sulphate reduction has not occurred (e.g. Aller, 1982).

Phosphorus is enriched in organic-matter rich and anoxic sediments. P is a micro-nutrient, and hence it is more effectively enriched with enhanced organic-matter burial. Redox-dependent cycling in anoxic conditions may aid the release of P, with the reduction of iron oxide phases at the sediment water interface providing a feed-back loop which enhances productivity and hence the degree of anoxia (Ingall and Jahnke, 1996).

Magnesium is related to the kaolinite and dolomite content in many ancient North American black shales (Ross and Bustin, 2008, 2009) and is hence often related to detrital content; trace Mg is also incorporated in CaCO$_3$ (e.g. Vine and Tourtelot, 1970; Brumsack, 1989, 2006) with a temperature-dependent relationship.

Strontium is incorporated in CaCO$_3$ as it is significantly enriched through the biological precipitation of carbonate tests, which is a temperature-dependent process (Plank and Langmair, 1998).

Silicon is included as a structural component of clastic grains, a major constituent of plankton skeletons (Brumsack, 2006).

Germanium behaves very similarly to Si in marine conditions, and is taken up by
siliceous organisms (Froelich and Andreae, 1981). Reducing conditions with which contain Fe$^{2+}$ in the water column are also considered a potential sink for Ge (Hammond et al., 2000). Very few studies have included Ge in organic-rich sediments.

**Biological component or involved in biocycling; indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite)**

Sulphur can be biologically sourced (e.g. Leventhal, 1983), it is also major component of sedimentary pyrite and was hence included in that section.

Thallium is a rarely studied trace element in sediments which is not included in many of the older studies. Heinrich et al. (1980) showed that Tl was more closely related to sulphur than to organic carbon. Thallium may also be involved in biocycling as suggested by Böning et al. (2004) with respect to the Peruvian upwelling, but more work is required to confirm this.

Cadmium is enriched in several ways under anoxic conditions. The most important is the inclusion of Cd into sulphides (e.g. Heinrichs et al., 1980; Kreming, 1983). Heinrichs et al. (1980) showed that Cd was more closely related to sulphur than to organic matter in black shales. It also can accumulate in phosphates (Nathan et al., 1997) which explains some of the differences which are seen in Cd enrichments relative to other trace elements that are included in sulphates (Turgeon and Brumsack, 2006). Cadmium is also involved in biocycling, and is often associated with plankton growth (Calvert and Pedersen, 1993).

Copper is a micronutrient (e.g. Calvert and Pederson, 1993) and through organic matter is generally enriched in many anoxic environments. Off the coast of Peru biocycling above the oxygen minimum zone is suggested to be the main reason for its enrichment (Böning et al., 2004). Cu can also be included into sulphides (e.g. Morse, 1994). Another factor which can complicate its enrichment is an increase in the concentration of Cu in sea water with depth due to biological scavenging near the surface (Calvert and Pederson, 1993).

Nickel is considered a micronutrient in the oceans and is important to plankton growth. In anoxic conditions it is also incorporated into sulphides, but requires a solid surface to precipitate onto (Calvert and Pederson, 1993). Ni can also be correlated to
oxyhydroxides in the water column, which are dissolved in oxygen-depleted pore waters (Calvert and Pederson, 1993).

**Depleted under suboxic/dysoxic conditions; indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite)**

Bismuth is often also reduced under oxygen depleted conditions Bertine *et al.* (1996), however is presented in the anthropogenic section.

Manganese is generally depleted in oxygen minimum zones (e.g. Huerta-Diaz and Morse, 1992; Böning *et al.*, 2004; Brumsack, 2006). Mn gets dissolved from the sediments and transported along the oxygen minima layers to more oxygen-rich waters. The processes involved in Mn enrichment or depletion are complex. Enrichment of Mn in sediments usually correlates positively with Fe and Co (Roy, 1992). Mn$^{2+}$ is the reduced form of manganese and is generally soluble in sea water, but easily oxidised to Mn$^{4+}$ (Huerta-Diaz and Morse, 1992). The latter is more stable as a solid state and often forms manganese nodules. MnO$_2$ is the most common form of solid Mn in nature, but is not stable in reducing conditions. Thus, Mn depletion is generally observed in upwelling environments. Bacteria utilising solid state sulphate can oxidise Mn into a solid state. With the lack of oxygen in reducing conditions, Mn$^{4+}$ formed by bacteria is precipitated into calcites or sulphates, with only ~20% remaining in the water (Aller and Rude, 1988).

Cobalt is included into sulphides, and can thus be enriched in sulphur-rich anoxic conditions (Kreming, 1983). In sulphur-poor anoxic conditions Co behaves similarly to Mn and Bi, and in upwellings is generally depleted (Böning *et al.*, 2004).

**Enriched under reducing conditions**

Arsenic is generally enriched in organic-rich sediments (Brumsack, 2006). Off the coast of Peru it has been suggested As may be enriched through diffusion, and the limited enrichment there was mainly due to sea water availability rather than the saturation of As in the sediments. However, it may also be related to pyrite as it varies similar to Mo (Böning *et al.*, 2004). Huerta-Diaz and Morse (1992) also found that very little As is in the pore fluids in anoxic conditions but that most of it is deposited with pyrite precipitation. Morse (1994) showed that the oxidation of sedimentary pyrite will
release most of the As in a very short period of time. This type of oxidation occurs naturally during sediment re-suspension or in seasonally anoxic regions. In outcrop, As is considered relatively stable during the weathering of black shales as it has a solid state when oxidised, with leaching tests showing less than 1% loss upon oxidation (Lavergren et al., 2009).

Chromium is enriched almost purely because of redox sensitivity. It exists in two main forms in the oxic ocean, as CrO$_4^{2-}$ and, to a lesser extent, Cr(OH)$_2^{+}$(H$_2$O)$_4$. However, under reducing conditions, it generally forms Cr (H$_2$O)$_4$(OH)$_2^{+}$ (Elderfield, 1970), and is quickly moved into the sediments (Calvert and Pederson, 1993). For Cr to be effectively scavenged into sediments, the pore waters must be completely anoxic (Morse and Luther, 1999).

Vanadium is always enriched in oxygen depleted marine settings. V has three soluble oxidation states which occur naturally, HVO$_4^{2-}$, H$_2$VO$_4^-$ and VO(OH)$_3^-$ (e.g. Turner et al., 1981). When reduced, however, V is precipitated as V$_2$O$_3$ or V(OH)$_3$ (Wanty and Goldhaber, 1992). V has a strong relationship with organic matter yet its concentration is chiefly governed by redox sensitivity (e.g. Shaw et al., 1990). A main limiting factor is often sea water availability, as has been suggested for the Peruvian upwelling (Böning et al., 2004).

Uranium is enriched in reducing sediments in several ways. Uranium enrichments in black shales were noticed very early (e.g. McKelvey and Nelson, 1950), and thus U is one of the better studied elements in anoxic conditions, and has been noted to diffuse directly into the sediments (e.g. Shaw et al., 1990), and to precipitate uranium salts (Disnar and Sureau, 1990). Phosphates contain the best link to U enrichments in most marine sediments, with phosphate-rich black shales considered generally the most enriched (e.g. McKelvey and Nelson, 1950). In anoxic conditions the limiting factor on U enrichment is generally its availability in sea water.

**Enriched under reducing conditions, rarely studied**

Selenium is often enriched in upwelling zones, yet the reason for enrichment is not clear. Se is involved in biocycling (Cutter, 1989) but is also enriched at the bottom of the ocean in the form of Se$^{6+}$, and thus upwelling intensity may be important in the Se
supply in upwelling zones (Crusius and Thompson, 2003). Solid Se is normally related to Ag; in sub-oxic conditions biological influences can produce AgSe or Ag₂Se (Crusius and Thompson, 2003).

Antimony is a poorly understood trace element in respect to its behaviour in anoxic conditions (e.g. Filella et al., 2002). Takayanagi and Cossa (1997) suggested that Sb may be included into manganese and iron oxide particles or sulphides. Sb is generally enriched in oxygen-depleted environments (e.g. Böning et al., 2004), but the exact process causing the enrichment is unknown.

**Rarely studied in sediments**

Tin and W are very rarely studied metals in oxygen-depleted conditions, having been omitted from most trace element studies on sediments.

Sodium is not considered very well suited to trace element studies in sediments as it would require a salt correction (Brumsack, 2006).

Lithium is a highly reactive element when in solid form. The mechanisms for variation are not well understood, although hydrothermal fluids are thought to be a major cause of Li enrichments (e.g. Chan and Kastner, 2000). It may hence be affected by late stage diagenesis, especially with regards to illite and smectite (e.g. Howard, 1981). Variation in Li is likely to occur in fluid-sediment processes, as clay ion exchange with ammonium and volcanic ash alteration are known to change the isotopic composition of Li in the pore waters (Chan and Kastner, 2000).

**Rare earth elements (REE)**

Yttrium is occasionally measured in trace metal studies on anoxic sediments (e.g. Ross and Bustin, 2009), but it rarely shows much variation. Y generally behaves in a similar way to the REE (e.g. Haskin and Gehl, 1962), and many techniques have difficulty separating these elements. For this reason Y is presented with the other REE in this study.

The lanthanides, La, Ce, Pr, Nd, Sm, Eu, Gd, Tb, Dy, Ho, Er, Tm, Yb and Lu are relatively unique in that their abundances are usually addressed relative to one another,
not in relation to Al. With the exception of Ce, the lanthanides are all trivalent and are fractionated from the neighbouring lanthanides by various chemical processes. The fractionation is caused by having similar chemical properties but with decreasing atomic radii with increasing atomic number (e.g. Bryne and Kim, 1993). The measurement of these elements in sediments is not new, and has been done by many authors; it is normally compared to shale or chondrite standards.

Caesium has been found to behave similar to Mn in sea water (e.g. de Baar et al., 1988; German and Elderfield, 1989; Sholkovitz et al., 1992). Ce is generally depleted from the sediments in anoxic conditions due to redox forcing, and is often found enriched in ferromanganese nodules. Redox depletion starts under suboxic conditions well above the O₂/H₂S interface in the Saanich Inlet, British Columbia (German and Elderfield, 1989).

Europium may also be reduced under strong anoxic conditions; however it is generally more stable in its reduced form and hence would be expected to be enriched in anoxic conditions. Eu is, however, difficult to reduce and this is more likely to occur at higher temperatures, such as under hydrothermal and metamorphic conditions (Sverjensky, 1984).

In sea water Gd behaves in the opposite way to Tb, where it is often enriched slightly while Tb is depleted. This is thought to be due to different behaviours when scavenged by falling particles in the water column (de Baar et al., 1985). This may not always to be reflected in the sediments, however, as what is scavenged from the water column is not always added to the sediments (Brown et al., 1989).

The remaining lanthanides are often thought to be sourced mainly from siliciclastic detritus (Schröder and Grutzinger, 2007); however, they may also be included in the organic fraction, with the organic component having up to an order of magnitude greater lanthanide fraction than the rest of the sample (Abanda and Hannigan, 2006).
3.0. Regional setting

During the Late Paleocene, the New Zealand landmass was entering a passive margin state dominated mainly by thermal subsidence. However, greater subsidence rates than those expected from thermal subsidence alone occurred in the Great South Basin and over much of the Campbell Plateau, suggested to be due to mantle convection (Sutherland et al., 2010). Whether the thermal subsidence or mantle convection related subsidence had begun by the time the Tartan and Waipawa formations were being deposited is uncertain (Schiøler et al., 2010; Beggs 2010a).

Late Cretaceous to Eocene sediments in New Zealand represent a general marine transgression as facies changed from the non calcareous sandstones and mudstones to a calcareous mudstones. In the East Coast Basin this is represented by the transition from the Whangai Formation, a late Cretaceous to Late Palaeocene formation, to the Wanstead Formation (Moore, 1988; Field et al., 1997). A similar change occurs in the Great South Basin where the Wickliffe Formation is replaced by the Laing Formation, then later by an even more distal facies, the Tucker Cove Formation, an Eocene-Oligocene chalk present in the most distal parts of the basin (e.g. Beggs, 1993; Cook et al., 1999; Schiøler et al., 2010).

The East Coast Basin is characterised by marine sediments through the Paleocene and Eocene, however the sediments suggests a relatively proximal shoreline. In the Great South Basin both terrestrial and marine deposits occur through this time, and a fluctuation paleoshoreline can be traced through time on seismic reflection profiles (Lipski, 2004). Figure 3.0.1 shows the evolution of the New Zealand continent through time, from 65-40 Ma. This figure shows a general marine transgression across the New Zealand landmass and indicates where the Waipawa Formation was deposited in relation to the shoreline location.
Figure 3.0.1: Maps of New Zealand through time. These maps show the changes which the New Zealand continent went through between 65 and 40 Ma. These maps show the Paleocene rifting, and the subsequent passive margin state. While a shoreline has been invoked in the East Coast Basin, any terrestrial deposits have long since been eroded away. Figure from King (2000).

3.1. The East Coast Basin.

Introduction

The East Coast Basin is structurally complex due to the initiation of the Hikurangi Subduction Zone. Erosion of Paleogene sediments such that Pliocene sediments directly overlie Mesozoic basement (Beanland et al., 1998) is common in the forearc basin region to the west; the eastern section is dominated by a complex fold thrust belt, which locally exposes Paleogene sediments in the onshore section (Ballance, 1993; Lewis and Pettinga, 1993; Field et al., 1997).

Stratigraphy

A generalised stratigraphy for the East Coast Basin is provided in figure 3.1.1; most of the basin is dominated by a marine setting during the period of interest (Paleocene and Eocene).

Figure 3.1.1: Generalised stratigraphy of the East Coast Basin, figure from Field et al., (2004).
**Whangai Formation**

The Whangai Formation is a Late Cretaceous to Late Paleocene marine mudstone which consists of several members. Three members are regionally extensive and two only appear only locally (Moore, 1988).

The Rakauroa Member (Moore, 1988) is a hard, poorly-bedded, bioturbated, medium grey, non-calcareous, micaceous mudstone that is rusty when weathered. It contains thin glaconitic sandstone beds, scattered concretions and pyrite nodules, with rare chert and calcareous beds (Moore, 1988).

The Porangahau Member (Moore, 1988) is a hard, well bedded, light to very light grey, highly calcareous mudstone. Glaucolithic sandstone beds are common, as are red, brown, and green mudstones and ripple laminated sandstones. Thin light and dark grey alternating mudstone beds within are often referred to as the zebra beds”. The mudstone beds within the Porangahau Member are generally moderately to highly bioturbated.

The Upper Calcareous Member is generally a hard (Moore, 1988), poorly bedded, medium-grey micaceous mudstone. This member is slightly calcareous (1-15%) and generally bioturbated, can contain calcareous concretions, pyrite nodules, glauconitic sandstone beds, and rare brecia. The Upper Calcareous Member is generally a light blue-grey when weathered (Moore, 1988) but a white patchy coating, possibly of gypsum, was noticed on some outcrops during fieldwork.

Kirk's Breccia Member (Moore, 1988) is only present in a few localities and only at the base of the Whangai Formation, and is not important to this study.

The Te Uri Member (Moore, 1988) is only present at some localities, and is not present in the Angora Quarry area. However, Rogers *et al.* (2001) showed it contains a unit that can be correlated to the Waipawa Formation. It consists of glauconitic sandstone inter-bedded with glauconitic, slightly calcareous, laminated siltstone.

**Waipawa Formation**

The Waipawa Formation is dark brown to black, poorly bedded mudstone to siltstone that is occasionally laminated and often glauconitic. The formation generally has a gradational lower contact with a sharp but conformable upper contact. It rarely
exceeds 50 meters in thickness; however, it is regionally pervasive throughout the East Coast Basin and is common elsewhere around New Zealand.

Many of the geochemical (figure 1.2.1) and lithological properties of the Waipawa Formation vary greatly throughout the East Coast and further afield. The thickness varies from 2 to 60 m within the East Coast Basin (Hollis et al., 2005b). The colour varies from dark brown to grey black, while the general lithology varies from mudstone to siltstone or occasionally fine sandstone (Moore, 1986).

**Wanstead Formation**

‘Wanstead Formation’ is often used in the East Coast Basin as a generic term referring to fine grained smectite-rich sediments of Paleocene to Eocene age (Moore and Morgans, 1987; Field et al., 1997). The Wanstead Formation is generally poorly bedded and is greenish grey to grey in colour, but can, however, have a bluish tinge locally (Moore and Morgans, 1987). There are occasional glauconitic beds. The formation is generally considered mid-bathyal, and lower bathyal-abyssal in parts (Field et al., 1997).

### 3.2. Great South Basin

**Introduction**

The Great South Basin is located south of the South Island of New Zealand. It is a completely offshore basin. While the extent of the basin can be traced using gravity anomalies (e.g. Cook et al., 1999), the bulk of the data on the basin comes from the petroleum industry in the form of eight offshore exploration wells, over 30,000 km of 2D and 1200km$^2$ 3D seismic data (Crown Minerals, 2010).

The Tartan Formation was first encountered in the Canterbury Basin, in the Endeavour-1 hydrocarbon exploration well which was drilled in 1971. However it was it was not recognised as the Waipawa equivalent and the interval was tentatively
correlated to the Otepopo Formation - a Late Paleocene glauconitic sandstone (Wilding and Sweetman, 1971). The Toroa-1 well was the first well in the Great South Basin to penetrate the Tartan Formation in 1976 (HIPCO, 1977b).

**Stratigraphy**

Since the rifting of the Great South Basin in the mid Cretaceous (e.g. Cook et al., 1999) it has become progressively dominated by marine sediments. A shrinking terrestrial facies persisted, however, at the north-western basin margin until the Eocene. A generalised stratigraphy for the Great South Basin is presented in figure 3.2.1.

**Wickliffe Formation**

The Wickliffe Formation has its type section in Kawau-1A (Cook et al., 1999),

![Generalised stratigraphy for the Great South Basin](image)

**Figure 3.2.1:** Generalised stratigraphy for the Great South Basin, figure from Cook et al., (1999), updated with changes from Schioøler et al., (2010)
where it was first defined as both a 25 m section above and an ~1000 m section below the Tartan Formation. This was later revised to include only the interval below the Tartan Formation after a re-examination of cuttings and side wall cores (SWCs) by Schioøler et al. (2010). Both the Wickliffe and Tartan formations are part of the Pakaha Group.

The Wickliffe Formation is described as light grey clay with subordinate darker brown shales. The formation contains muddy sandstone units up to 10m thick, which are more prevalent in the western part of the basin. The sandstones are composed of quartz with pyrite, glauconite and mica. Overall, the well logs suggest the formation is composed of a series of fining upwards sequences (Cook et al., 1999). The Wickliffe Formation is also described as similar to the Whangai Formation on the East Coast of the North Island (Beggs, 1993; Cook et al., 1999).

**Tartan Formation**

The Tartan Formation is dark brown, carbonaceous and slightly calcareous, very micaceous and slightly glauconitic shale (Cook et al., 1999). The gamma ray logs show a characteristic spike; however, in the more landward wells the spike is more difficult to identify (Schioøler et al., 2010).

Similarly to the East Coast Basin, a greensand formation (the Otepopo Greensand Formation) has been suggested as a possible time equivalent to the Tartan Formation (Wilding and Sweetman, 1971; Meadows, 2009). Study confirming this has yet to be done.

Only limited samples of the Tartan and associated formations are now available from Great South Basin wells. The thickness of the Tartan Formation in the Great South Basin varies between 27.6 and 71.7 m but is as thin as 16.5 m in the Canterbury Basin (Schioøler et al., 2010).

Rakiura-1 contained a coarse siltstone to fine sandstone facies that was light brown in colour, very micaceous and only locally carbonaceous. The formation was not originally assigned to the Tartan Formation due to its coarser grain size and lower TOC (Cook et al., 1999). From seismic data and well correlation the Late Paleocene is interpreted at Rakiura-1 as consisting mainly of a regressive package of off-lapping
sands with the Tartan Formation beginning further to the south-east and representing sediment possibly deposited during maximum sea level regression (Beggs, 2010b).

**Laing Formation**

Overlying the Tartan Formation is the Laing Formation, the oldest member of the Rakiura Group. The Laing Formation varies laterally, and at the more proximal wells Rakiura-1, Tora-1 and Tara-1 consists of 30 to 50 m thickness of sandstone with siltstone interbeds. The fine-grained beds are light grey to buff in colour, moderately calcareous and contain glauconite and traces of pyrite (Cook *et al.*, 1999). The sandstones are generally fine to medium grained, subangular, quartzose, and moderately sorted. The same interval in the more distal Hoiho-1C, Kawau-1A, Pakaha-1 and Pukaki-1 wells consists of calcareous claystones and shales, with some hard crystalline dolomite beds.
Chapter 4

Methods and field work

4.0. Introduction

This study utilised field samples from the East Coast Basin and side wall core (SWC) samples from the Pakaha-1 and Kawau-1A exploration wells in the Great South Basin. Measurement of trace elements was undertaken using inductively-coupled plasma mass spectrometry (ICP-MS) on an Agilent 7500CS ICPMS of the geochemistry laboratory at Victoria University of Wellington, while major elements and sulphur were measured commercially by SpectraChem Analytical, part of CRL Energy Ltd using x-ray fluorescence (XRF) on a Siemens SRS3000 wavelength dispersive XRF spectrometer.

Total organic carbon (TOC) has previously been measured for the Great South Basin samples by Meadows (2008), and for Angora Quarry samples by Leckie et al. (1992). However, as the samples collected during the present study from Angora Quarry are not identical to those of Leckie et al. (1992), their TOC values can only be regarded as indicative.

4.1. East Coast Basin fieldwork and samples

Angora Quarry is an abandoned quarry located on Angora Road in the southern Hawkes Bay region of the East Coast (figure 4.1.1). The quarry is located in a stream-cut valley, and several faults affect this region (Leckie et al., 1992). The main section, including the quarry and the stream below, does not show the contact between the Waipawa and Wanstead formations; further upstream both the Waipawa and Wanstead formations are exposed, although the actual contact here is also obscured.

Field work was conducted during May, 2010. Sampling began 44 m below the
Waipawa Formation, within the Upper Calcareous Member of the Whangai Formation. Thirteen samples were collected at the quarry and in the stream directly below, eight of which were within the Upper Calcareous Member and five within the Waipawa Formation. Approximately 1 km upstream another 2 samples were collected, one within the Waipawa Formation and one within the Wanstead Formation. At this location both formations were very weathered and fresh samples required considerable excavation. Separate stratigraphic columns were measured for both sites (Figure 4.1.2). Samples labelled “A-A” are from within or directly below Angora Quarry, while samples labelled “A-C” are from the field site further upstream. Photos of the samples are included as figure 4.4.3.

The Upper Calcareous Member varied significantly in colour through the eight samples collected. The first five samples (A-A-1 to A-A-5) were relatively uniform, blue-grey mudstones when weathered, medium grey when fresh and dry, and light grey when powdered. The thickness of bedding varied from tens of cm to massive.

The A-A-6 sample (at 20.5 m) was dark grey when weathered but light brown when fresh or powdered. The change occurred from the typical Upper Calcareous Member over a distance of about 50 cm and was gradational. The thickness of this layer is uncertain as the next 10 m were obscured.

A-A-7 was again light grey when weathered and medium grey when fresh or dry, although slightly darker than the samples 1-5. It showed white spotty weathering (probably gypsum).
Figure 4.1.2: Simplified stratigraphic columns of the Angora Quarry site. Sample locations are shown as well as major changes throughout the section. Increases in lamination and in *Terebellina* abundance are indicated by additional symbols. Laminations and *Terebellina* fossils are only marked at the sample locations as often these were only visible under closer examination or once dry.
A-A-8 was darker than the rest of the Upper Calcareous Member. It was slightly laminated and contained thin greensand beds between 3-10mm in thickness.

The aggregated tubular foraminiferan *Terebellina* is common throughout the Waipawa Formation (e.g. Moore 1987, 1988). At Angora Quarry most were fragmented to various degrees. Figure 4.1.4 compares a possible fragment from sample A-A-7, and one of the best preserved fossils images from sample A-A-12. Whether or not sample A-A-7 contains *Terebellina* is uncertain and not important to the conclusions of this study.

The Waipawa Formation conformably overlies the upper calcareous member, with a half metre gradational contact. The Waipawa Formation in this location is dark brown to dark grey in colour, often stained with a red-brown or yellow mineral which precipitates on the outer surface. The red-brown and yellow has been interpreted as jarosite (Moore, 1988), and as gypsum (Hornibrook, 1959). This staining, however, is

---

**Figure 4.1.3:** Images of samples from Angora Quarry on white paper background to show colour variation.

A-A-8 was darker than the rest of the Upper Calcareous Member. It was slightly laminated and contained thin greensand beds between 3-10mm in thickness.

The aggregated tubular foraminiferan *Terebellina* is common throughout the Waipawa Formation (e.g. Moore 1987, 1988). At Angora Quarry most were fragmented to various degrees. Figure 4.1.4 compares a possible fragment from sample A-A-7, and one of the best preserved fossils images from sample A-A-12. Whether or not sample A-A-7 contains *Terebellina* is uncertain and not important to the conclusions of this study.

The Waipawa Formation conformably overlies the upper calcareous member, with a half metre gradational contact. The Waipawa Formation in this location is dark brown to dark grey in colour, often stained with a red-brown or yellow mineral which precipitates on the outer surface. The red-brown and yellow has been interpreted as jarosite (Moore, 1988), and as gypsum (Hornibrook, 1959). This staining, however, is

---

**Figure 4.1.4:** A comparison between a white speck which may potentially be part of a *Terebellina* fossil in sample A-A-7 left, and one of the best preserved samples right (sample A-A-12). The image to the right is a compilation of 11 images in order to get everything in focus.
only on the weathered sections and not on the fresh samples collected, determining the
exact nature of the mineral is beyond the scope of this study.

Samples A-A-9 to A-A-13 were samples of the Waipawa Formation from within
Angora Quarry. All but sample A-A-10 contained *Terebellina* fragments. The colour
varied significantly through these samples with sample A-A-10 the lightest and sample
A-A-13 the darkest. The samples ordered in colour are shown in figure 4.1.5, the photos
are in black and white in order to easier see differences in how dark the samples are.

**Figure 4.1.5:** Samples from Angora Quarry ordered by colour. Images are in black and white
in order to highlight the differences. The same images as in figure 4.1.3 have been used.

The contact between the Waipawa and Wanstead formations was obscured and/or
faulted and Wanstead Formation did not outcrop in this area, so samples from the
uppermost Waipawa Formation and the overlying Wanstead Formation were taken from
~1 km upstream. The contact was once again covered although only 9.5m of rock was
could not be observed. Pictures of the samples are shown in figure 4.1.3. A black and
white image of these samples is shown in figure 4.1.6.

In overview, 15 samples were collected during fieldwork, eight samples of which
were from the Upper Calcareous Member of the Whangai Formation, six were from the
Waipawa Formation, and one was from the Wanstead Formation.

**Figure 4.1.6:** Greyscale images of samples from field site ~1km upstream from Angora Quarry.
The same images as in Figure 4.1.3 were used.
4.2. Great South Basin

Pakaha-1

Pakaha-1 had a total of 30 side wall core (SWC) samples attempted between 3376 and 1935 m below rotary kelly bushing (mbkb); however, two of the side wall gun bullets failed and three returned empty. The Tartan Formation was encountered in SWC samples 17 and 18. The present study used the six samples between SWC 13 through 24 for which there was still side wall core material remaining after many years of use for other research.

Descriptions of the fresh SWC samples were taken from the well completion report (HIPCO, 1977) and are presented in table 4.2.1. These descriptions are brief, however, and not enough sample remains to do a more detailed description. The shaded samples are those used in this study, as there was insufficient material remaining of the others. The locations of the SWC samples in relation to the gamma ray log are shown in figure 4.2.1.

Figure 4.2.1: Gamma ray wireline log from Pakaha-1 (HIPCO, 1977) plotted alongside the SWC locations. The grey section represents the Tartan Formation, the closed circles represent samples included in this study, and the open circles represent SWC samples which were used up in previous studies. 100 api is an approximate gamma ray value for average shale.
Kawau-1A was included in a preliminary study (Fuerst, 2009) that is included here in appendix B; however these results have been reinterpreted in more detail and in a regional context in this thesis.

Kawau-1A had four sets of SWCs taken, and the Tartan Formation was sampled during the fourth run. Thirty sidewall cores were attempted in the latter, with 29 being recovered. The Tartan Formation was encountered in samples 19/4 and 20/4 (Hunt International, 1977). In order to use a standard naming convention which fits with other studies the '/4' is added consistently to all Kawau-1A samples to represent the 4\textsuperscript{th} SWC run.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SWC</th>
<th>Depth feet bkb</th>
<th>Depth mbkb</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>7390</td>
<td>2252.47</td>
<td>Medium soft moderately soft silt rich calcareous claystone (nannofossil marl) with minor mica and pyrite.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>7425</td>
<td>2263.14</td>
<td>Medium grey soft silt-rich calcareous claystone (marl) with pyrite plus minor mica and carbonaceous debris.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>7570</td>
<td>2307.34</td>
<td>Medium grey soft silt-rich claystone with pyrite, plus minor mica, carbonaceous debris and “glaucnite”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>7710</td>
<td>2350.01</td>
<td>Medium brown-grey soft clay-rich siltstone with pyrite, carbonaceous debris and “glaucnite” plus minor mica.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>8115</td>
<td>2473.45</td>
<td>Medium grey moderately soft silt-rich claystone with occasional white silty lamina, pyrite and calcite plus minor mica, “glaucnite” and carbonaceous debris.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>8218</td>
<td>2504.85</td>
<td>Dark grey soft silt-rich claystone with carbonaceous debris and pyrite plus minor mica.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>8300</td>
<td>2529.84</td>
<td>Dark brown moderately soft clay-rich carbonaceous claystone with pyrite plus minor mica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>8450</td>
<td>2575.56</td>
<td>Dark brown moderately soft clay-rich carbonaceous siltstone with pyrite plus minor calcite and mica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>8655</td>
<td>2638.04</td>
<td>Dark grey moderately hard clay-rich siltstone with calcite, carbonaceous debris and pyrite plus minor mica.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>8720</td>
<td>2657.86</td>
<td>Dark grey moderately hard silt-rich carbonaceous siltstone with mica and pyrite plus minor calcite.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>8920</td>
<td>2718.82</td>
<td>Dark grey moderately soft clay-rich carbonaceous siltstone with mica and pyrite plus minor calcite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>9310</td>
<td>2837.69</td>
<td>Medium grey, moderately hard (fissile) silt-rich claystone with pyrite and carbonaceous debris plus minor calcite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.1: SWC descriptions from the Pakaha-1 well report (HIPCO, 1977), although the “as above” descriptions in the report have been elaborated for this table. Shaded rows represent the SWC samples for which there is still material remaining, and hence which were included in this study.
As with Pakaha-1, a gamma ray log is presented with the sample locations (figure 4.2.2), and the sample descriptions in table 4.2.2. Both Tartan Formation samples were shot on gamma ray peaks, thus the character of the interval in-between is less certain.

**Figure 4.2.2:** Gamma ray wireline log from Kawau-1A (Hunt International, 1977) plotted alongside the SWC locations. The grey section represents the Tartan Formation, the closed circles represent samples included in this study, and the open circles represent SWC shots where the samples have been used up in previous studies. 100 api is an approximate value for average shale.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SWC</th>
<th>Depth feet bkb</th>
<th>Depth mbkb</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25/4</td>
<td>7153</td>
<td>2180.23</td>
<td>Shale very light grey, very soft, thin laminations, black carbonaceous partings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24/4</td>
<td>7176</td>
<td>2187.24</td>
<td>Shale, very light grey-buff, soft, semi-waxy, very thin laminations sub-fissile, very slight trace carbonaceous inclusions. Trace mica, pyrite.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23/4</td>
<td>7195</td>
<td>2193.04</td>
<td>Shale light grey-tan, becoming predominantly soft. Very thin laminations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22/4</td>
<td>7220</td>
<td>2200.66</td>
<td>Shale light grey-tan, becoming predominantly soft. Very thin laminations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21/4</td>
<td>7276</td>
<td>2217.72</td>
<td>Shale, very light grey, firm, soft, semi-waxy, thin laminations, sub fissile. Rare carbonaceous inclusion. Trace pyrite. Non calcareous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20/4</td>
<td>7350</td>
<td>2240.28</td>
<td>Shale, chocolate brown, some laminations of dark grey-brown very micaceous shale. Slight gas odour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19/4</td>
<td>7424</td>
<td>2262.84</td>
<td>Shale, chocolate brown, firm, sub fissil-blocky, non calcareous, carbonaceous, micaceous, rare trace glauconite. Slight gas odour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18/4</td>
<td>7550</td>
<td>2301.24</td>
<td>Shale, light-medium, firm, blocky, trace mica, pyrite, glauconite. Non calcareous, no carbonaceous partings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17/4</td>
<td>7794</td>
<td>2375.61</td>
<td>Shale light grey-tan, firm, blocky, slightly calcareous, trace mica, pyrite, glauconite. Few carbonaceous partings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16/4</td>
<td>7830</td>
<td>2386.58</td>
<td>Shale, light grey-tan, firm, blocky, slightly calcareous, trace mica, pyrite, glauconite. Few carbonaceous partings</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 4.2.2:** SWC descriptions from Kawau-1A (Hunt International, 1977), grey rows represent samples included in this study, and white rows are samples which were used up in previous studies.
4.3. Laboratory Techniques

Pre-laboratory sample preparation

Field samples were crushed and approximately 15 g of fresh sample was powdered using a tungsten carbide mill. The sample was then mixed and split, and approximately 5 g of sample was sent to SpectraChem Analytical, Lower Hutt, for XRF analysis of major oxides. Loss on ignition and bulk sulphur were also included in the XRF results. Standard XRF procedures are used and the laboratory is ISO 17025 accredited assuring quality and reproducibility of the results.

Samples from Pakaha-1 and Kawau-1A were not as cemented as the field samples, and hence did not require crushing or powdering. Unfortunately there was insufficient SWC material available for XRF analysis, and thus major oxide information is not available for these samples, ICP-MS was done on the well and field samples.

For Pakaha-1 and Kawau-1A, the primary standard used was USGS BHVO-1 (for calibration), BHVO-2 was used as the secondary standard to check accuracy and reproducibility. For the field samples from Angora Quarry the USGS BHVO-2, was used as the primary standard and BCR-2 as the secondary standard. Different standards where used due to the limited amounts of BHVO-1 being available.

Beaker cleaning

Beakers were first rinsed then soaked in ~7 M Analytical Reagents grade (AR) HNO₃ and placed on a hotplate for 24 hours. They were then rinsed three times in Milli-Q water and soaked in 6 M AR HCl for 24 hours, and again rinsed three times with Milli-Q.

The beakers were then individually cleaned; 2 ml of 6-7 M HCl sub-boiled (sb) was poured into the beakers and they are left on the hotplate for 1-2 days. This acid was then disposed of and the beakers rinsed three times with Milli-Q water. The process was repeated with 2 ml of 6-7 M HNO₃ (sb). A final clean was conducted using 2 ml of 7M HNO₃ SEASTAR™ (ss) with 3-4 drops of HF (ss).

From impurities listed on the containers, AR grade HNO₃ contains 0.011 ppm Fe
The highest concentrated impurity; HCl contains 0.13 ppm Al as the greatest impurity. The sb grade acids are distilled in the Victoria University geochemical laboratory using quartz and Teflon stills, exact concentrations of impurities are unknown, however likely a few orders of magnitude higher than the 1-5 ppt impurities in the SEASTAR™ acids.

**Sample digestion**

Sample digestion was performed according to Heinrichs and Herrmann (1990). ~50 mg of sample were placed in each beaker; weights were recorded to an accuracy of 0.05 mg. 45 drops of 7 M HF (ss) and 8 drops of 7 M HNO₃ (ss) and were left on the hotplate for four days. The samples were then opened dried overnight.

45 drops of HNO₃ was added and left open on the hotplate overnight to dry.

6 ml of 6 M HCl (sb) was added and left on the hotplate for two days. Beakers were then opened left overnight to dry.

45 drops of HNO₃ (ss) was added and left open on the hotplate to dry.

9 ml of 1M HNO₃ was added and left on the hotplate for two days. The samples were then centrifuged.

The sample was weighed and 0.09ml was taken and diluted with 9ml 1 wt% HNO₃ for analysis using the methodology discussed by Schnetger (1997). The blank was not diluted.

**4.4. Data Processing**

**Absolute Concentrations**

The raw ICP-MS data came in the form of counts per second and time, with a value for each element approximately every second. Figure 4.4.1 shows the raw ICP-MS data for Ca at Angora Quarry. Each peak represents either a sample or a standard, while the troughs represent the cleaning fluids and the local background.
The first step in calculating concentrations is to take the average background from 1% HNO$_3$ from the average from the average within the sample, the parts highlighted in red in figure 4.4.1. This is done for all samples and standards for all elements.

Concentrations are then calculated from the BHVO-2 standard (the concentrations of all standards were taken from the GeoReM database), which was measured five times throughout the process, each correction was to the nearest BHVO-2 measurement. The formula used was:

$$E_{\text{Sample}} = \frac{CPS_{\text{Sample}}}{CPS_{\text{BHVO-2}}} \times E_{\text{BHVO-2}}$$

where $E$ is the element concentration and $CPS$ is the counts per second. For Pakaha-1 and Kawau-1A BHVO-1 was used instead of BHVO-2.

In the Angora Quarry samples, the measurement of BCR-2 occurred between the middle of the measurements of other samples. BCR-2 standard contains approximately two orders of magnitude more Mo than the samples. Mo readings dropped slowly after

![Figure 4.4.1: Raw ICP-MS measurements for Calcite at Angora Quarry. The Y axis gives the CPS, the X time through the measurements. Highlighted in red are the sections of the measurement used for calculating the concentration in A-A-1. The horizontal lines represent two orders of magnitude.](image-url)
switching from measuring BCR-2 to the cleaning fluids. The readings were not always
down to the background values by the time the cleaning liquid cycle was completed.
Thus, several samples were affected by a significantly higher than background level of
Mo. Molybdenum is an important element used to determine if an environment is
anoxic, a different background curve for Mo was defined for affected samples.

Molybdenum values for A-A-3, 4, 11, and 12 should be treated with caution, as
errors may be larger than shown. Figure 4.4.2 shows the raw data for Mo along with the
newly defined background curves in red. The samples which had new background
values defined are highlighted in red later in this study.

For the Angora Quarry samples, absolute concentrations from the ICP-MS data
underwent a final correction step in which data was adjusted to the Ti concentration as
measured by XRF. This is simply to correct for any systematic errors for a single sample
which can be caused by inaccuracies in measuring and dilution. All results are included
as tables in appendix C.

**Error calculations**

For Pakaha-1 and Kawau-1A, errors were calculated on BHVO-2, the
concentration of BHVO-2 was calculated using BHVO-1 in the same way sample
concentrations where calculated, the errors being represented by the difference between

![Figure 4.4.2. Raw data for Mo measurements in the Angora Quarry samples. The red line indicates the newly defined background curve for A-A-3, 4, 11 and 12. The graph has a log scale on the Y axis. Only every second order of magnitude is labelled. See text for discussion.](image)
the measured and the actual measured values. As Pakaha-1 and Kawau-1A were measured in the same run, the errors apply to both of these. The errors are displayed in table 4.4.1 for the Great South Basin samples.

The “range %” in the errors table (table 4.4.1, 4.4.2) indicates the relative error between elements across different samples. The “offset from ref value” indicates the absolute error which effects all measurements of the same elements identically. The low concentration of Sb and Cd in BHVO-2 may also explain the high errors in these, whereas the remaining elements with “offset from ref value” above 10% have the * symbol, indicating they were published values rather than preferred values, and hence may not have been measured to the same accuracy.

Errors for Angora Quarry were measured using BCR-2 otherwise the errors are the same. Table 4.4.2 shows the calculated errors using BCR-2. When a “*” or a “**” is

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>First BHVO-2 measurement below</th>
<th>First BHVO-2 measurement above</th>
<th>Second BHVO-2 measurement below</th>
<th>Second BHVO-2 measurement above</th>
<th>average</th>
<th>range</th>
<th>range%</th>
<th>ref value</th>
<th>offset from ref value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ti</td>
<td>2.60</td>
<td>2.59</td>
<td>2.59</td>
<td>2.64</td>
<td>2.61</td>
<td>±0.0335</td>
<td>1.3%</td>
<td>2.73</td>
<td>4.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>303</td>
<td>301</td>
<td>305</td>
<td>308</td>
<td>304</td>
<td>±3.49</td>
<td>1.1%</td>
<td>317</td>
<td>4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cr</td>
<td>277</td>
<td>276</td>
<td>275</td>
<td>280</td>
<td>277</td>
<td>±3.06</td>
<td>1.1%</td>
<td>280</td>
<td>1.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mn</td>
<td>0.161</td>
<td>0.160</td>
<td>0.160</td>
<td>0.162</td>
<td>0.161</td>
<td>±0.00157</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>5.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Co</td>
<td>42.5</td>
<td>42.4</td>
<td>42.9</td>
<td>43.9</td>
<td>42.9</td>
<td>±0.999</td>
<td>2.3%</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>4.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ni</td>
<td>111</td>
<td>111</td>
<td>113</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>113</td>
<td>±3.04</td>
<td>2.7%</td>
<td>119</td>
<td>5.3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cu</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>123</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>124</td>
<td>±3.73</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>2.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As</td>
<td>0.516</td>
<td>0.521</td>
<td>0.545</td>
<td>0.534</td>
<td>0.529</td>
<td>±0.016</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>31%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Se</td>
<td>0.110</td>
<td>0.112</td>
<td>0.111</td>
<td>0.091</td>
<td>0.106</td>
<td>±0.0148</td>
<td>13.9%</td>
<td>0.1*</td>
<td>6.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rb</td>
<td>6.24</td>
<td>6.03</td>
<td>6.42</td>
<td>8.81</td>
<td>8.38</td>
<td>±0.431</td>
<td>5.1%</td>
<td>9.11</td>
<td>8.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sr</td>
<td>372</td>
<td>365</td>
<td>369</td>
<td>379</td>
<td>371</td>
<td>±7.88</td>
<td>2.1%</td>
<td>396</td>
<td>6.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>24.4</td>
<td>23.6</td>
<td>24.0</td>
<td>25.4</td>
<td>24.4</td>
<td>±1.02</td>
<td>4.2%</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>6.3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zr</td>
<td>161</td>
<td>157</td>
<td>159</td>
<td>167</td>
<td>161</td>
<td>±6.14</td>
<td>3.8%</td>
<td>172</td>
<td>6.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nb</td>
<td>17.2</td>
<td>16.9</td>
<td>17.0</td>
<td>17.6</td>
<td>17.2</td>
<td>±0.414</td>
<td>2.4%</td>
<td>18.1</td>
<td>5.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mo</td>
<td>3.74</td>
<td>3.63</td>
<td>3.67</td>
<td>3.77</td>
<td>3.70</td>
<td>±0.0693</td>
<td>1.9%</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cd</td>
<td>0.0807</td>
<td>0.0835</td>
<td>0.0884</td>
<td>0.0859</td>
<td>0.0846</td>
<td>±0.00395</td>
<td>4.7%</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>41%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sn</td>
<td>1.41</td>
<td>1.40</td>
<td>1.59</td>
<td>1.86</td>
<td>1.56</td>
<td>±0.292</td>
<td>18.6%</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sb</td>
<td>0.0833</td>
<td>0.0786</td>
<td>0.0844</td>
<td>0.091</td>
<td>0.0844</td>
<td>±0.00675</td>
<td>8%</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>35%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hf</td>
<td>4.01</td>
<td>3.92</td>
<td>4.20</td>
<td>4.37</td>
<td>4.12</td>
<td>±0.250</td>
<td>6.1%</td>
<td>4.36</td>
<td>5.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>1.08</td>
<td>1.09</td>
<td>1.15</td>
<td>1.19</td>
<td>1.12</td>
<td>±0.0603</td>
<td>5.4%</td>
<td>1.14</td>
<td>1.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>0.152</td>
<td>0.137</td>
<td>0.178</td>
<td>0.195</td>
<td>0.166</td>
<td>±0.0293</td>
<td>17.7%</td>
<td>0.21*</td>
<td>21%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ti</td>
<td>0.0185</td>
<td>0.0194</td>
<td>0.0241</td>
<td>0.0246</td>
<td>0.0216</td>
<td>±0.00315</td>
<td>14.6%</td>
<td>0.03*</td>
<td>28%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pb</td>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>1.46</td>
<td>1.60</td>
<td>1.67</td>
<td>1.57</td>
<td>±0.105</td>
<td>6.7%</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>2.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bi</td>
<td>0.00662</td>
<td>0.00652</td>
<td>0.0108</td>
<td>0.0124</td>
<td>0.00907</td>
<td>±0.00331</td>
<td>36.5%</td>
<td>0.15*</td>
<td>94%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Th</td>
<td>1.08</td>
<td>1.08</td>
<td>1.13</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>1.12</td>
<td>±0.0879</td>
<td>7.8%</td>
<td>1.22</td>
<td>7.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>0.360</td>
<td>0.350</td>
<td>0.402</td>
<td>0.431</td>
<td>0.386</td>
<td>±0.0452</td>
<td>11.7%</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>4.3%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.4.1: Error calculations for Kawau-1A and Pakaha-1. The * in the reference value column represents where published values were used instead of preferred values from GeoReM as preferred values were not available. See text for discussion.
BCR-2 has been taken instead.

The values in the table below have not been measured accurately or have not been measured at all and a value from next to the reference value, the reference value is less certain, either because values have not been measured accurately or have not been measured at all and a value from BCR-1 has been taken instead.

Table 4.4.2: Errors calculated form BCR-2 for Angora Quarry. The * in the reference value column represents the use of the published value due to the lack of a preferred value in GeoReM. The ** represents where the value for BCR-1 was used instead.
Terrestrial background corrections

The terrestrial component of sediments generally consists largely of aluminosilicate clays, exact mineralogy varies with the sediment source. There are two different terrestrial corrections which remove this component, both of which require estimates of the concentration of terrestrial component, and both of which generally take Al as an indicator for the amount of detrital clays.

Most commonly detrital corrections use the chemical composition of average shale, a compilation of shales by Wedephol (1971). A comparison between this derived local background from this study and average shale is shown in figure 4.4.3.

Variations in the local background relative to average shale cover around two orders of magnitude (figure 4.4.3), this variation indicates that average shale is not an ideal standard to use for this study, therefore a locally defined background will be used instead. In this case, the locally defined background is the samples outside the Waipawa or Tartan formations which were measured in the same section. Each section will hence use its own local background.

Enrichment factor:

The first method for calculating a detrital correction is the standard enrichment factor that has become the sole method for calculating enrichment in many recent studies (e.g. Brumsack, 2006; Ross and Bustin, 2009). This method normalises values to

---

Figure 4.4.3: A graph comparing the average concentration of the Whangai and Wanstead formations at Angora Quarry, and the Laing and Wickliffe formations at Pakaha-1 and Kawau-1A with average shale from Wedephol (1971), which plots at 1. See text for discussion.
Al and then calculates a factor of enrichment relative a set standard. The formula is:

$$EF = \frac{(E_s / Al_s)}{(E_B / Al_B)}$$

where **EF** is the enrichment factor, **E** is the element being analysed, **Al** is aluminium, **s** is the sample, and **B** is the standard or local background.

The enrichment factor calculation has limitations in regions where Al values are low (Brumsack, 2006), or in situations where the terrestrial content varies significantly throughout the section (this study).

**Absolute Enrichment:**

The second method of calculating enrichment is the absolute enrichment method, and is not often used. A formula for calculating it was suggested by Brumsack (2006):

$$AE = E_s - Al_s * \left(\frac{E_B}{Al_B}\right)$$

where **AE** is the absolute enrichment, **E** is the element measured, **Al** is aluminium, **s** is the sample, and **B** is the standard used. Brumsack (2006) suggested using average shale for the calculation; however.

The difference between AE and EF comes when there is a significant difference in the terrestrial component through a section. In Kawau-1A the uppermost sample contains 20% of the detrital component as the Tartan Formation. While the AE will show any enrichment above local background as absolute values, the EF will show five times the enrichment due to the low detritial component. Figure 4.4.4 shows the difference between the enrichment factor and absolute enrichment for As in Kawau-1A.

Arsenic was enriched by around 3ppm in the Tartan Formation, and by around 1.5ppm in the uppermost sample, in the AE graph the enrichment comes across as such, however, the EF is a ratio of As relative to the amount of detrital indicators, hence it is higher in samples which have lower detritial input.

Enrichment factors may be a better method when dealing with elements such as Mn which are depleted under anoxic conditions. Assuming the depletion is leaching the element directly from the detrital content of the sediments, an enrichment factor should be a more appropriate method to express this as it would then represent the fraction of the Mn dissolved, the AE formula would in this case vary with detrital content.
Sr and Mg have been difficult to deal with, as most marine sediments contain some biological carbonate. The inclusion of Ca, Sr and Mg in biological carbonate as well as being minor components in the terrestrial minerals has made extracting enrichment data difficult. While often measured, these elements generally are not interpreted any further (e.g. Brumsack, 2006; Ross and Bustin, 2009).

The present study suggests a technique for dealing with these elements using ternary plots. However, to produce meaningful results, this technique should only be used in areas where the local background has been defined. This technique will aid in making corrections where two mechanisms of enrichment are prevalent, in this case biological calcite and detrital component. Sr and Mg are both used in conjunction with Ca in palaeothermometry (e.g. Dodd 1967), but if any other environmental conditions have an effect on these elements differences may be difficult to detect.

Figure 4.4.5 shows a ternary plot for Ca, Sr and Al for the samples from Angora Stream, along with values for average shale from Wedepohl (1971). Average shale has a very different concentration to the measured samples at Angora Stream and hence would not be suitable for making corrections. The intersection point between the trend line and the edge of the ternary plot occurs where Sr * 500 is equal to 22.9 % of the Sr * 500 + Al₂O₃ value.
In an ideal situation where all Ca and Sr is purely biological and none is introduced from a detrital origin or included in another mineral phase (e.g. gypsum), the line would plot directly through $\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3$, indicating that Sr/Ca varies independently from the detrital content. However, this ideal situation is unlikely so another method must be used to correct for both the biological and the detrital sources of Sr and Ca.

An assumption must be made for this form of correction that the element varies in the background samples purely due to two sources, in this case detrital content and calcareous input. This can be expressed as:

$$E_S = (E/Ca)_{\text{DETITAL}} \times \text{Al} + (E/Ca)_{\text{BIOLOGICAL}} \times \text{Ca}_{\text{BIO}}$$

where $E_S$ is the amount of element in the sample, $(E/Ca)$ is the element ratio in either the detrital, or biological calcite fraction, Al is the amount of aluminium, taken to represent the detrital input, and Ca$_{\text{BIO}}$ is the biological calcite.

The intersection point on the ternary diagram represents only the difference between the Sr/Ca ratio in the detritial component and in the calcite. Applying a correction to the Sr values relative to Al will cause the line to plot directly through the 100% $\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3$ point. As the intersection point is at 22.9% Sr * 500 or 87.1% $\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3$, the correction needs to be:

$$\text{Sr} * 500_{\text{S}} - (22.9/87.1)\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3_{\text{S}}$$

Figure 4.4.5: Ternary plot used to correct Sr for both local background and carbonate inclusion. Average shale as defined by Wedepohl (1971) is significantly different to values for all the East Coast Basin formations included in this study.
where $s$ represents sample.

This correction does not remove the entire background Sr, nor does it remove the CaO background input. The effect of this correction is purely to apply a correction to the detrital fraction of element E such that

$$(E_{\text{CORRECTED}}/Ca)_{\text{DETRITAL}} = (E/Ca)_{\text{BIOLOGICAL}}.$$ 

This correction was applied to a synthetic data set where the amount of detrital Al and biological Ca were calculated using random number generators. 1% of the detrital Al value was taken to represent detrital Ca, 0.1% of biological Ca value biological Sr, and 0.03% of the detrital Al value detrital Sr. Sr was then multiplied by 500. Figure 4.4.6 shows the impact of this correction on a synthetic data set without random measurement errors and assuming a constant Sr/Ca\text{BIOLOGICAL} (no temperature effects).

**Figure 4.4.6:** The first step of the correction method for elements which have two background inputs. The points are synthetic data points representing a set of background samples in which purely biological calcite and background detrital content are important. See text for details.
As can be seen from the graphs (figure 4.4.6), a trend with a large amount of variation is visible in the Cartesian graph prior to the correction but this variation is removed completely after the correction in B. The amount of variation before the correction is purely due to the variations in both detrital content and calcite content. The correction is not perfect, as can be seen from the red diamond representing purely detrital calcite in C. However, the detrital value has been moved onto the trend line indicating that the remaining detrital calcite has the same ratio of Sr/Ca as the biological calcite.

While the synthetic data does not have random errors and we can make assumptions that Ca/Sr is constant, real data cannot and this correction may under some circumstances need to be adjusted. The value on the ternary diagram is an indication of an approximate value; the effect of converting the data to fit in a ternary diagram and applying a correction relative to Al are both non-linear corrections relative to the Ca values. This limitation causes the trend line calculation to give slightly different results after the correction to what might otherwise be expected. The detrital correction may hence need to be adjusted using a standard Cartesian graph with Sr corrected/Ca. A trend-line forced through 0,0 should be applied to the data, and the adjustment value altered to produce the best possible R² value.

Data points at each end of the Cartesian graph can alter the slope of the graph significantly and hence the intercept. By forcing the intercept through zero and adjusting towards the best R² value, dependent on the errors and the spread of the data the difference in the value from that extracted from the ternary diagram may or may not be significant; in this study the difference was trivial.

The final step of the correction method is to remove the pseudo-biological input; as part of this is still the detrital content which has the same Ca/Sr ratio, this will also be removed. A gradient must be extracted from the Cartesian Ca/Sr graph, then a simple correction removes an absolute amount of Sr dependent on the amount of Ca in the sample. This is similar to the absolute correction formula but with Ca instead of Al.

Several assumptions are made in this correction method. The most important is that the section defined as background is only affected by two influences. In the case of Sr the assumption is made that it is related purely to Ca and Al. An assumption is also made that there are minimal changes in concentration of the element to the background
ratio in both the biological sources. In the example used above, it is assumed that the temperature effects on the Ca/Sr ratio are minimal and that there is no variation in the Sr/Al or Ca/Al ratio of the detrital background.

This method may be applicable for other sediment types and processes; however, the same assumptions of constant detrital ratio and a maximum of two sources for the element must also be applicable. If two elements vary identically due to the same environmental conditions a similar straight line will be observed. Ternary graphs can be used in this way to help identify which elements are related under different environmental influences.

The technique of calculating enrichments using ternary diagrams as described above gives absolute enrichments; results for elements such as Sr should hence be comparable to elements which are affected by a single background corrected using the absolute enrichment formula.
Chapter 5

Results

5.0. Angora Quarry

Overview

51 elements were measured for the Angora Quarry samples using XRF or ICP-MS. Ti and Ca were measured using both techniques; Ti was used to provide a bulk correction to ICP-MS data accounting for any sample loss during digestion. Ca, which showed great variation across the samples, was used to ascertain whether the two instruments produced compatible data and hence if it would be reasonable to combine the two studies into the same data set. Figure 5.0.1 shows a plot of Ca measured by the two instruments ($\text{Ca}_{\text{XRF}}$ vs. $\text{Ca}_{\text{ICP-MS}}$). Results are presented in tables in appendix C.

Both ICP-MS and XRF gave very similar results, with the trend line only

![Graph of Ca<sub>XRF</sub> Vs. Ca<sub>ICP-MS</sub>](image)

**Figure 5.0.1:** Graph of $\text{Ca}_{\text{XRF}}$ Vs. $\text{Ca}_{\text{ICP-MS}}$ to ascertain whether these two techniques are comparable for this particular study. See text for discussion
deviating slightly from the 1:1 ratio; such variation is well within the error limits of the analyses. The graph (figure 5.0.1) indicates that these two data sets can confidently be used conjointly.

Elements are presented in the same groups for all the locations and in the same order as in chapter 2.4. Where possible, the processes discussed in chapter 2 will be linked to results in the discussion chapter, although not all of the processes are observed.

Major sedimentary components

Ternary plots of CaO, Al$_2$O$_3$, and SiO$_2$ can be used to infer sediment composition, (Brumsack, 1989; section 2.2), as these three major oxides are the main inorganic compounds in most sediments. Moore (1988) measured oxides in many East Coast formations and figure 5.0.2 shows data from both his and the present study.

Values for CaO and Al$_2$O$_3$ are multiplied by constants (2 and 5 respectively) making them comparable to SiO$_2$ and consistent with existing literature which uses the same values (e.g. Brumsack, 1989). A value for average shale (from Wedepohl, 1971) has also been plotted on these ternary diagrams; however, none of the samples analysed here nor any other samples analysed from the East Coast Basin have the same concentration as average shale.

Figure 5.0.2: Ternary graphs showing three major constituents of the sediments; A is data solely from this study; B includes this study and similar measurements from Moore (1988). Average shale is taken from Wedepohl (1971). In both graphs the Waipawa Formation and the Whangai Formation plot in groups, while the Wanstead Formation shows more variation.
This diagram already separates most Waipawa Formation samples from the Whangai Formation due to the decrease in calcite. The Te Uri Member of the Whangai Formation plots amongst the other Whangai Formation samples.

**Aluminium**

The graph for Al$_2$O$_3$ (figure 5.0.3) shows considerable variation with depth, from 7.5 to 12.8 wt %. From sample A-A-1 to A-A-13 Al$_2$O$_3$ concentration can be viewed as either a near linear increase or a stepped increase with a middle step between 20 and 40 m.

For the Angora Quarry samples, Al$_2$O$_3$ is used to correct the rest of the data for the terrestrial component and hence no enrichment factor or absolute enrichment graphs are plotted. For this and subsequent images, the grey band represents the Waipawa Formation, the black line represents field site A-A at the Quarry, and the grey line represents the section field site A-C, ~1 km upstream. The “average shale” value for Al$_2$O$_3$ (Wedepohl, 1971) is 16.7 wt %. Where possible this will be denoted with a vertical line on the absolute variation sections; however, where this would require a change in scale that would obscure other variations within the formation, average shale is not plotted. Although samples have been labelled in figure 5.0.3, the samples are not labelled in the other graphs in this section as the graphs are smaller. Hence this graph should be used for sample reference.

**Mainly terrestrially-sourced elements**

Figure 5.0.4 shows the graphs for the other elements for which the variation is assumed to be largely due to detrital contribution to the sediments. Most of the elements show a similar trend to Al$_2$O$_3$, and have an enrichment factor of about 1 and an absolute enrichment close to 0. The single exception is Ga which does not vary along with the
other largely terrestrially-sourced elements.

As a cautionary note, care should be taken when viewing multiple enrichment factor graphs. The enrichment factor formula introduces the variation seen in Al into EF and AE graphs, and hence can increase the apparent correlation between unrelated elements (van der Weijden, 2002). For detrital elements this is not an issue, but for elements which are largely independent of Al it can falsely lead to an appearance of correlation.
Loss on ignition (LOI)

LOI is the loss of mass when heated in a furnace to 1000°C and mainly indicates volatile matter. LOI (figure 5.0.5) increases through the Waipawa Formation, which may be due to the increase in organic matter, which reaches 6% in Angora Quarry (Lecike et al., 1992).

Indicators of anoxia (major components of sedimentary pyrite)

Fe and S are plotted against depth in figure 5.0.6. Fe shows an increase at 20 m, significantly below the Waipawa Formation in samples, but otherwise remains relatively uniform once corrected for terrestrial input. Sulphur shows depletion through the section; samples at 20.5, 41.9, 48.3, 54.7, 67.5 and 80 metres all had SO$_3$ contents below the detection limit of 0.01 wt% for XRF. Further study to determine the exact concentration was not followed up here.

Indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite)

The abundance of Zn with depth (figure 5.0.7) varies significantly between 54 and 213 ppm, but only the sample at 41.9 m shows strong enrichment. Difficulties in measuring Mo were discussed earlier in this chapter, and the samples affected are highlighted in red. Concentrations of Mo fluctuate between 1.4 and 8 ppm throughout.
Indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite); *anthropogenic in recent sediments*

Pb (figure 5.0.8) varies in a similar way to detrital content (figure 5.0.4), once detrital content has been corrected for using EF and AE formula, Pb shows considerably less variation however shows 2.7 ppm AE in one sample at 54.7 m, during the deposition of the Waipawa Formation.

**Figure 5.0.8:** Depth graphs for Pb at Angora Quarry. There is considerably less variation in the EF and AE than that shown by the absolute concentrations.

**Biological component or involved in biocycling**

The elements which have a major biological component to them or which are important for biocycling are plotted in figure 5.0.9.
Ba appears to have a similar trend to Ga (figure 5.0.4); however, a plot of Ba/Ga with the A-C-2 (80 m) sample removed because it is significantly different only shows an $R^2$ correlation of 0.55 (as opposed to 0.96 if A-C-2 is left in). Figure 5.0.10 shows Ba/Ga, and a Ba/Al/Ga ternary diagram. Correlation in the ternary diagram is improved, with an $R^2$ value of 0.94 without sample A-C-2. A better fit is attained by including Al$_2$O$_3$, indicating these elements share the same detrital and non-detrital component.

The similarities between Ca and Sr are clearly visible in figure 5.0.9. The normalisation technique described in section 4 was applied to Sr to create a version of AE which took into account both biological and detrital components (figure 5.0.11).
Figure 5.0.10: The relationship between Ga and Ba for the Angora Quarry samples. A direct relationship between Ba and Ga is not indicated on the Cartesian graph; however, if the ratio differed in the terrigenous background to the biological process involved, the relationship would produce a better fit on the ternary diagram. In both cases, the upper $R^2$ value is with A-C-2 included and the lower value is without A-C-2.

Figure 5.0.11: The correction of Sr for both Al and Ca. A contains the raw data, B after the detrital correction, C after adjusting the correction, and D after applying the biological correction.
depletion of Sr in the Waipawa Formation (D) is real depletion, as can be seen in figure 5.0.11 where the Waipawa Formation samples plot further from Sr on the ternary diagram.

An attempt was made to correct Mg in the same way as for Sr. However, on a ternary diagram (figure 5.0.12), Mg crosses very close to Ca, showing that the variation is only slightly influenced by Ca. In this study it appears that biological CaCo₃ contributes only a minor amount towards the overall Mg content, and some other process is significant enough to impact on this correction. Therefore Mg could not be corrected in the same way as Sr but, in sediments with higher Ca contents and lower detrital contributions, it may be possible to correct for both biological and terregionous Mg content.

The CaO depth graph (figure 5.0.9) has a similar shape to the SO₃ depth graph (figure 5.0.6). Figure 5.0.13 shows the relationship between SO₃ and CaO. There is a definite similarity between CaO concentration and SO₃, but the relationship is not linear and hence a direct linear relationship cannot be inferred.

No correlations were found between the other elements of biological origin. A change in element concentrations between samples 19.5 and 20.5 m (figure 5.0.9) is noticeable in all the biologically influenced elements, and appears far more prominent than the change in element concentration between the Whangai and Waipawa formations.
Biological component or involved in biocycling; *indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite)*

No direct relationship could be found between Cu, Tl, Cd and Ni (figure 5.0.14) and any of the other biological indicators or indicators of anoxia. The two samples enriched in Cu (61.1 and 80 m) are also the two samples with lowest P content, but no other samples indicate a relationship between Cu and P. Both the AE and the EF

![Figure 5.0.13: A plot of CaO vs. SO$_3$ at Angora Stream. See text for discussion.](image)

![Figure 5.0.14: Depth graph for elements affected by both sedimentary pyrite and biological processes.](image)
methods introduce high frequency variation (larger variation in nearby samples) into the Tl graph. Both Cd and Ni show peaks near the base of the Waipawa Formation; both are involved in biocycling and are important for plankton growth. The peaks for these enrichments are in different samples therefore the reason for these abundances is not clear.

**Depleted under reducing conditions; indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite)**

There is no correlation between Mn and Co (figure 5.0.15). Mn was measured using XRF, and could only be measured to 0.01 wt %; hence the results should be treated with care. Co shows an increase in concentration through the Waipawa Formation. In average shale, Mn is present at 0.085 wt % (Wedepohl, 1971), which is considerably higher than the values measured for Angora Quarry.

![Figure 5.0.15: Mn and Co variations with depth. XRF results are measured to an accuracy of 0.01 wt %](image)

**Enriched under reducing conditions**

U, As and Cr all show a slight increase in concentration (figure 5.0.16), even after normalisation in the Waipawa Formation and, in the case of As, also in sample 20.5 m. V is enriched in some of the Waipawa Formation samples but not to any significant degree. U is significantly more abundant than in average shale through the entire section, whereas As and V are considerably less abundant than the average shale.
concentrations of 10 and 130 ppm respectively.

![Graphs showing concentration trends for As, U, V, and Cr](https://via.placeholder.com/150)

**Figure 5.0.16:** Elements which are generally enriched under oxygen depleted conditions.

### Enriched under reducing conditions, rarely studied

Sb (figure 5.0.17) shows no distinct trend through the section, with great variations in concentration (5 - 8 ppm) in the Whangai Formation samples. After correcting for detrital input Sb shows depletion in many of the Waipawa Formation samples.

![Graph showing Sb concentration](https://via.placeholder.com/150)

**Figure 5.0.17:** Antinomy is rarely studied but generally enriched under oxygen-depleted conditions.

### Rarely studied in sediments

Sn shows little variation prior to detrital corrections (figure 5.0.18), and the correction introduces more variation. Aside from a peak in abundance in Li at 48.3 m
the concentration is relatively constant, especially in the AE and EF graphs. Na peaks in concentration at 41.9 m, there are other minor fluctuations in the AE and EF sections for Na.

**Rare Earth Elements (REE)**

Rare earth elements all show identical trends through the section, so only La was plotted (figure 5.0.19), the most prominent feature being the increase in abundance in sample A-A-13. A comparison between the different rare earth elements can be done by normalising them to different standards. The two standards used were average chondrite.

*Figure 5.0.18: Element-depth graphs for elements which are rarely studied in sediments or which are generally not considered suitable for sediment studies.*

*Figure 5.0.19: Depth section for La, all other REE and Y which behaves like REE follow the same trend and have the same shape, so they were not plotted separately.*
Comparison of Angora Quarry rare earth concentrations to those of average chondrite shows that all of the former samples are enriched in the light REEs (La-Sm) (figure 5.0.20). There is little variation between the different samples, excluding sample A-A-13 which appears to be particularly enriched in the mid REEs (Pr- Er). A standard which appears to be more appropriate is the NASC standard, as this standard is also enriched in light REEs (figure 5.1.21).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Chondrite</th>
<th>NASC</th>
<th>Chondrite</th>
<th>NASC</th>
<th>Chondrite</th>
<th>NASC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>La</td>
<td>0.367</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>Eu</td>
<td>0.087</td>
<td>1.24</td>
<td>0.249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ce</td>
<td>0.957</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>Gd</td>
<td>0.306</td>
<td>5.20</td>
<td>0.036</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pr</td>
<td>0.137</td>
<td>7.9</td>
<td>Tb</td>
<td>0.058</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>0.248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nd</td>
<td>0.711</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>Dy</td>
<td>0.381</td>
<td>5.80</td>
<td>0.038</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sm</td>
<td>0.231</td>
<td>5.7</td>
<td>Ho</td>
<td>0.085</td>
<td>1.04</td>
<td>2.250</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Chondrite</th>
<th>NASC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2.250</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yb</td>
<td>0.038</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2.250</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lu</td>
<td>0.038</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eu</td>
<td>0.087</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ho</td>
<td>0.085</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tb</td>
<td>0.058</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dy</td>
<td>0.381</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gd</td>
<td>0.306</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tb</td>
<td>0.058</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sm</td>
<td>0.231</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nd</td>
<td>0.711</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pr</td>
<td>0.137</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ce</td>
<td>0.957</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 5.0.1: Values for average chondrite and NASC from Taylor and McLennan (1985). These values represent 1 in figures 5.1.19 and 5.1.20.

Comparison of Angora Quarry rare earth concentrations to those of average chondrite shows that all of the former samples are enriched in the light REEs (La-Sm) (figure 5.0.20). There is little variation between the different samples, excluding sample A-A-13 which appears to be particularly enriched in the mid REEs (Pr- Er). A standard which appears to be more appropriate is the NASC standard, as this standard is also enriched in light REEs (figure 5.1.21).

When normalised to NASC it is apparent that for the Whangai and Wanstead formations the trend is relatively uniform and flat, aside from A-A-8 which has less La and Ce than other Whangai Formation samples. The Waipawa Formation samples show more variation. Enrichment in the mid REEs is a lot more apparent in A-A-13, while A-C-2 shows more variation. In particular the latter is higher in Eu and more strongly enriched in light REEs (figure 5.1.21).
5.1. Kawau-1A

Overview

26 elements were measured for Kawau-1A. XRF was not conducted on the SWC samples from Kawau-1A as there was insufficient sample material. Al could not be measured due to the concentration being too high, therefore for EF and AE calculation purposes variations in Hf, Zr, Nb and Ta were averaged in this study. These elements were chosen as they are elements which are known not to vary fractionate significantly in nature (e.g. Ross and Bustin, 2009). Ti was not used as it can vary due to sedimentary sorting (Dellwig et al., 2000).

As no absolute concentrations were available to correct the data for potential sample loss, some samples may have lower concentrations across elements. The EF calculation is based on fractions within the sample and not on absolute concentrations, and thus the EF is unaffected; however the absolute concentrations and the AE may be affected.
A comparison of two of the terrestrial indicators, Ti and Zr, to the gamma ray log (figure 5.1.1) shows that the terrestrial background varies similarly to the gamma ray log. While the absolute concentrations may still vary slightly, the above indicates that it is likely to be approximately correct. However, the gamma ray log may be influenced by other factors as well as the terrestrial background and, whereas the side wall core represents only a few cm of sample, gamma ray log readings are averaged over several metres.

![Figure 5.1.1: A comparison between two mainly terrestrially sourced elements Ti and Zr, and the gamma ray log in Kawau-1A. The Gamma ray log has a maximum resolution of several metres while the SWC samples is a point sample representing only a few cm. Sample numbers are shown to the right.](image)

**Mainly terrestrially-sourced elements**

Variation in the terrestrial component within Kawau-1A is significant (figure 5.1.2). The stratigraphically highest sample 2180 m contains a fifth of the concentration compared to the top sample in the Tartan Formation (2240 m). This large variation makes a large difference in the EF; when these samples contain the same AE, the EF is five times higher at 2180 m.
Figure 5.1.2: Terrestrial indicators in the Kawau-1A well plotted in their depth location in the well. See text for discussion.

Indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite)

Figure 5.1.3: Mo in Kawau-1A well, both AE and EF show enrichment of Mo in the Tartan Formation, particularly in the lowermost sample.
Mo shows significant enrichment through the Tartan Formation (figure 5.1.3), but otherwise there is minimal variation from the local background. For all samples the Mo content is greater than the 2.6 ppm in average shale.

**Indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite); anthropogenic in recent sediments**

Pb and Bi both show variation through the section (figure 5.1.4). Pb is depleted in the middle three samples (2220 – 2305 m) especially in the AE and EF figures. Bi also shows some depletion, although to a lesser degree.

The difference between EF and AE normalisation is evident especially in the top Pb sample. The AE is similar for the top samples (2180 and 2200 m) but at 2180 m the SWC has a significantly higher EF as a result of having a detrital input some 2.5 times lower.

**Biological component or involved in biocycling**

Sr (figure 5.1.5) varies between 47 and 254 ppm through the Kawau-1A well;
however, all samples within the Laing Formation (above the Waipawa Formation) are the only elements which are enriched above the average background in both the AE and EF.

As the Ca concentration is unknown, using a ternary diagram as for Angora Quarry is not possible. Ba and Ga were also not measured, so a ternary diagram showing these is similarly not possible.

**Biological component or involved in biocycling; indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite)**

Tl, Ni, and especially Cd are enriched in the uppermost sample (figure 5.1.6) from the Laing Formation. In the Tartan Formation Cd is relatively constant after the detrital correction, and Tl shows only minor changes. Cu and Ni both show increases within the Tartan Formation, Cu only in the uppermost sample and Ni in both.

Ni and Tl are both examples of AE normalisation giving results which are more suitable than EFs for the largely varying background composition seen in Kawau-1A.

---

**Figure 5.1.6:** Elements which are enriched both by inclusion in sedimentary pyrite and through biocycling plotted against depth.

Tartan Formation, Cu only in the uppermost sample and Ni in both.
Depleted under oxygen-depleted conditions; *indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite)*

![Graph showing Mn and Co concentrations](image)

**Figure 5.1.7**: Mn and Co in the Kawau-1A well. See text for discussion.

The Mn content is relatively constant (figure 5.1.7) except for 2300 m, where there is 50 ppm more Mn than expected. Co follows a trend very similar to the terrestrial indicators, and its EF is close to 1.

**Enriched under reducing conditions**

![Graph showing As, U, V, and Cr concentrations](image)

**Figure 5.1.8**: Elements which are generally enriched under oxygen-depleted conditions.
Chromium, As, and U all show some enrichment through the Tartan Formation (figure 5.1.8). V shows only slight, insignificant enrichment.

**Enriched under reducing conditions, rarely studied**

Se is enriched through the Tartan Formation and in the uppermost sample from the overlying Laing Formation (figure 5.1.9). Sb shows no enrichment through the Tartan Formation, although it does resemble the trend seen for Bi. Ternary diagrams with Bi, Sb and Zr or Ti (figure 5.1.10) do support a possible similarity, suggesting a possible relationship between Sb and Bi, and a terrestrial component to both of these. However, there is sufficient variation from this trend to indicate that the relationship is more complicated. Ti gives a higher $R^2$ value than Zr for ternary diagrams indicating that the detrital Bi and Sb is closer to Ti values than Zr.

![Figure 5.1.9: Elements which are rarely studied but usually enriched under oxygen-depleted conditions.](image1)

![Figure 5.1.10: Ternary diagrams showing a relationship between the local background, Bi and Sb.](image2)
Rarely studied in sediments

Sn and W are rarely measured in sediment geochemistry. W (figure 5.2.11) appears to behave in a similar way to Bi and, when plotted against each other, an $R^2$ value of 0.93 is obtained (figure 5.1.12). Sn behaves in a unique way in Kawau-1A and could not be correlated to any other element.

Rare Earth Elements (REE)

No REE where measured, however, Y behaves like a rare earth element (e.g. Haskin and Gehl, 1962). Y is enriched in the Tartan Formation. Y concentrations are enriched through the Tartan Formation.
similar to concentrations at Angora Quarry where, excluding the erroneously high value, concentrations ranged from 7.7 to 15.3 ppm.

5.2. Pakaha-1

Overview

The concentration of 26 elements were measured in Pakaha-1. Samples were reduced and normalised in the same way as for Kawau-1A. The gamma ray log is shown with Zr and Ti overlaid (figure 5.2.1). Only the SWC sample at 2480 m (sample 20) varies greatly from the gamma ray trend. Whether this indicates that this sample has a lower absolute concentration across elements, that other effects apply, or that it is a resolution issue in the gamma ray log is uncertain.

Figure 5.2.1: A comparison between two mainly terrestrially-sourced elements, Ti and Zr, and the gamma ray log in Pakaha-1. The gamma ray log has a resolution of several metres while the SWC samples represent only a few cm.
Mainly terrestrially-sourced elements

Most of the terrestrial indicators show less variation in absolute concentration through the well than at Kawau-1A. However, the SWC at 2580 m (figure 5.2.2) contains significantly higher Rb than the other samples, with an EF of 3 or an AE of 133 ppm. This may indicate the presence of a mineral particularly rich in Rb. Any other elements which would be included in such a mineral could also be significantly enriched. At 2570 m is also the only Tartan Formation SWC from Pakaha-1 for which sample remains and whether the increased Rb is related to the lithology, oceanic conditions, or whether it indicates a different composition of terrestrial background is uncertain.

Figure 5.2.2: Terrestrial indicators in the Pakaha-1 well. A large spike in the Rb concentration is visible in the Tartan Formation. See text for discussion.
Indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite)

Molybdenum shows peak abundance in the sample directly above the Tartan Formation (figure 5.2.3, 2510 m). The other samples are all considerably lower in Mo. Mo concentration in this sample is similar to the concentration in Kawau-1A. The sample at 2510 m was taken at a gamma ray spike directly above the Tartan Formation (figure 5.2.1).

![Figure 5.2.3: Mo in the Pakaha-1 well. The sample with the highest abundance is SWC 19, and was taken at a point with high gamma ray values.](image)

Indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite); anthropogenic in recent sediments

SWC sample Pakaha-1 24 (2250 m) appears to be enriched in Pb (figure 5.2.4), as is the sample from within the Tartan Formation. Bi peaks in the sample above the Tartan Formation, which also shows a high GR value (figure 5.2.1) and is enriched in Mo.

![Figure 5.2.4: Pb and Bi values through Pakaha-1. See text for discussion.](image)
Biological component or involved in biocycling

Sr reaches values of up to 886 ppm in the uppermost sample from Pakaha-1 (figure 5.2.5), which far exceeds the Sr concentration in any other samples from any of the field locations. Both the AE and EF strongly reflect the absolute concentration graph as the variations far exceed the variations in terrestrial input. Sr contains a second smaller peak in the Tartan Formation. Sr showed peaks in the same samples as with Pb; however, a plot of the two produces a $R^2$ of 0.66, suggesting no direct relationship.

Figure 5.2.5: Sr values in the Pakaha-1 well. The peak is several times higher than the Sr concentration recorded in any other location in this study.

Biological component or involved in biocycling; *indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite)*

TI (figure 5.2.6) shows a peak in abundance within the Tartan Formation, and its absolute concentration strongly resembles that of Rb. A plot of Rb against TI gives an $R^2$ of 0.99 and, if the large peak at 2576 m is excluded, of 0.88 (figure 5.2.7).

Cd and Ni both peak in abundance in the sample directly above the Tartan Formation, the same sample as the highest concentrations of Mo and Bi. A direct correlation between these elements was not identified.
Depleted under oxygen-depleted conditions; indicators of anoxia (included in sedimentary pyrite)

Above the Tartan Formation Mn appears to increase in concentration in the uppermost two samples (figure 5.2.8). However, the highest concentrations are still below the average shale value of 850 ppm. Co shows considerable variation through the entire section, with its peak directly above the Tartan Formation, the same sample as

Figure 5.2.6: Elements which are affected by both sedimentary pyrite and biocycling plotted in depth sections for the Pakaha-1 well. See text for discussion

Figure 5.2.7: Graph showing the relationship between Rb and Tl. The R² of 0.99 includes SWC sample 17, whereas the other value excludes this sample.
Enriched under reducing conditions

Arsenic, U and V all have peak abundances in the sample directly above the Tartan Formation at 2500 m (figure 5.2.9). Arsenic and U show slight depletion in the other samples in the Laing Formation. Cr shows a strong depletion in the Laing Formation relative to the Tartan and Wickliffe formations.

Figure 5.2.9: Elements generally enriched under oxygen-depleted conditions plotted against depth in the Pakaha-1 well. U, As and V all have a spike in the sample directly above the Tartan Formation, whereas Cr shows a depletion in concentration through the section.
Enriched under reducing conditions, rarely studied

Sb and Se both show peak abundance in the sample directly above the Tartan Formation (figure 5.2.10). Sb otherwise remains constant throughout the rest of the section, but in contrast Se is depleted in the Laing Formation compared to the Wickliffe Formation.

![Figure 5.2.10: Elements generally enriched under oxygen depletion, but rarely measured. Se and Sb both contain the spike above the Tartan Formation, Se otherwise shows depletion through the Above the Tartan Formation.](image)

Rarely studied in sediments

Sn shows peak abundance above the background variation within the Tartan Formation (figure 5.2.11). This may be particularly significant as in both Angora Quarry and Kawau-1A the Tartan or Waipawa Formation samples were depleted in Sn after

![Figure 5.2.11: Rarely measured elements in Pakaha-1. Sn is enriched in the Tartan Formation, whereas W is enriched in the SWC sample above the Tartan Formation.](image)
terrestrial input had been taken into account. W is enriched in the sample directly above the Tartan Formation.

**Rare Earth Elements (REE)**

REE were again not measured for Pakaha-1, however Y which behaves like REE was. Y show little variation through the section (figure 5.2.12). The sample within the Tartan Formation may show some minor enrichment.

**Figure 5.2.12**: Y vs depth in the Pakaha-1 well Y shows little variation through the section.
6.0. Angora Quarry

Overview

In order to aid interpretation of the data, TOC measurements from Leckie et al., (1992) are presented in figure 6.0.1. These measurements are only indicative when related to the samples used in this study, as the values for the TOC as different samples from those of the present study were used. Leckie et al. (1992) also used a different starting point for the base of their section.

Although the TOC has not been measured directly in the present study, the samples were sorted by colour to provide an approximate guide to the amount of organic carbon present. While this value is not absolute, and thus precludes quantitative comparison, it does allow elements to be plotted in a specific order to show if any enrichments might covary with organic carbon content.

The Ternary diagram (figure 5.0.2) shows a distinct separation between the

![Figure 6.0.1: TOC values for the same interval at Angora Quarry section from Leckie et al. (1992). As Leckie et al. (1992) did not present data in tabulated form, this image was extracted from Killops et al. (2000) because of the higher resolution of the figure.](Figures/6.0.1.png)
Waipawa Formation and the other formations with respect to Ca, Si and Al. The relatively higher aluminium content comes at the expense of most of the calcite content and some of the silica.

Figure 6.0.2 shows aluminium content plotted against colour. A clear trend is visible for the darker samples with presumably higher TOC. A-C-1 and A-C-2 are plotted separately as they are not from the same section. Sample A-A-8 is the only outlier; this sample also contained several 3 mm to 1 cm thick glauconitic beds which are not in the photo and significantly lighter in colour, taking these into account would move the sample to the left.

![Figure 6.0.2: Al$_2$O$_3$ from Angora Quarry plotted against increasing darkness of the samples. Except for sample AA8, a darkening appears to indicate an increase in Al. A-C-1 and A-C-2 are plotted separately to the right as they are from further upstream, across a fault with unknown displacement. See text for discussion.](image)

The 5 wt% increase in Al$_2$O$_3$ must come at the expense of one or more other elements. Both CaO/Al$_2$O$_3$ and SiO$_2$/Al$_2$O$_3$ are plotted similarly in figure 6.0.3 and 6.0.4 respectively, although without the colour photos. Calcium is mainly included in sediments through biologically produced CaCO$_3$. Figure 6.0.3 shows the relationship between CaO/Al$_2$O$_3$, and sample colour. While the Ca does partially dilute the Al content it also dilutes other elements, and hence the maximum value of 6.8 wt% CaO should only make 0.93 wt% difference in the Al$_2$O$_3$ content while affecting elements
such as SiO$_2$ to a greater extent due to the high amount of Si present. The irregular

![Figure 6.0.3: CaO/Al$_2$O$_3$ ratio plotted against increasing darkness as in Fig. 6.0.2. While Ca does have some affect towards diluting the Al content of the sediments, the jagged nature and lack of similarity to figure 6.0.2 suggests it is not the main factor.]

nature of the plot, suggests that dilution of Al$_2$O$_3$ by CaO is neither the only nor the dominant process.

The SiO$_2$ relationship to Al$_2$O$_3$ (figure 6.0.4) is the expected relationship if the main element being diluted is SiO$_2$. Using SiO$_2$/Al$_2$O$_3$ and CaO/Al$_2$O$_3$ instead of the pure element concentrations removes the dilution effects of other elements and volatiles like LOI.

Overall the colour, likely caused by the organic-matter content at Angora Quarry

![Figure 6.0.4: SiO$_2$/Al$_2$O$_3$ ratio plotted against increasing darkness of samples as for Fig. 6.0.2. The ratio between SiO$_2$ and Al$_2$O$_3$ is what would be expected to explain the colour trend seen in Al$_2$O$_3$ concentration and indicates that the bulk of the increased Al comes at the expense of Si.]

95
covaries with Al content, and increases in Al content is closely related to a decrease in Si content and somewhat related to a decrease in biological Ca content.

**Terrestrial indicators**

Table 6.0.1 shows the correlation between all the elements which are assumed to be indicators of terrestrial background. Excluding Ga, the worst correlation is an $R^2$ coefficient of 0.766 between Al and Zr.

Gallium varies independently of the terrestrial source in this study, suggesting that it is not a suitable terrestrial indicator. A positive relation between Ga and Ba was noticed and is discussed below with the biological components.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Al</th>
<th>Nb</th>
<th>Ti</th>
<th>Rb</th>
<th>Th</th>
<th>K</th>
<th>Hf</th>
<th>Zr</th>
<th>Ga</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Al</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.970</td>
<td>0.970</td>
<td>0.950</td>
<td>0.949</td>
<td>0.937</td>
<td>0.799</td>
<td>0.766</td>
<td>0.011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nb</td>
<td>0.970</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.962</td>
<td>0.913</td>
<td>0.958</td>
<td>0.879</td>
<td>0.800</td>
<td>0.776</td>
<td>0.028</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ti</td>
<td>0.970</td>
<td>0.962</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.941</td>
<td>0.974</td>
<td>0.924</td>
<td>0.853</td>
<td>0.834</td>
<td>0.030</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rb</td>
<td>0.950</td>
<td>0.913</td>
<td>0.941</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.922</td>
<td>0.960</td>
<td>0.830</td>
<td>0.786</td>
<td>0.002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Th</td>
<td>0.949</td>
<td>0.958</td>
<td>0.974</td>
<td>0.922</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.877</td>
<td>0.872</td>
<td>0.848</td>
<td>0.012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>0.937</td>
<td>0.879</td>
<td>0.924</td>
<td>0.960</td>
<td>0.877</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.836</td>
<td>0.779</td>
<td>0.000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hf</td>
<td>0.799</td>
<td>0.800</td>
<td>0.853</td>
<td>0.830</td>
<td>0.872</td>
<td>0.836</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.979</td>
<td>0.002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zr</td>
<td>0.766</td>
<td>0.776</td>
<td>0.834</td>
<td>0.786</td>
<td>0.848</td>
<td>0.779</td>
<td>0.979</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ga</td>
<td>0.011</td>
<td>0.028</td>
<td>0.030</td>
<td>0.002</td>
<td>0.012</td>
<td>0.000</td>
<td>0.002</td>
<td>0.001</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6.0.1: $R^2$ correlation coefficients for elements thought to be detrital indicators; for each element on the vertical axis only the highest $R^2$ is coloured. The best matches between elements are shaded light grey, the highest value for Ga is dark grey, and the low result indicates no correlation. The elements are sorted in order from the best correlation to Al to the worst.

Figure 6.0.5: Graphs showing the correlation between Al, Zr and Hf. While Zr and Hf show a strong correlation to each other, Al shows some variation independently of these elements.

Although Al is taken to represent the bulk detrital composition, there is some evidence of variation in the mineralogical detrital composition. Zr and Hf are closely related with an $R^2$ value of 0.979 (figure 6.0.5) when plotted against one another; however, this ratio is less than 0.8 when plotted against Al.

Having $R^2$ ratios close to one and plotting through the origin indicates the detrital
sediment source remained constant with any variation due to dilution from other sources.

**Anoxic indicators (sedimentary pyrite)**

None of the samples from the three formations at Angora Quarry show any indication of sedimentary pyrite, suggesting that some oxygen was present during deposition. The sediments contain 2-4 wt% Fe, sufficient (figure 5.0.6) to form pyrite, suggesting that the lack of sedimentary pyrite is due to a lack of anoxic conditions.

**Oxygen depletion**

Manganese and Co are often depleted under reducing conditions. Of these, Mn may show some depletion in the Waipawa Formation (figure 5.0.15) but the measurement errors are too large for the observed variations to be considered significant. Co appears to be enriched through the Waipawa Formation.

From the elements which are normally enriched under oxygen-depleted conditions (figures 5.0.16, 5.0.17), only sample A-C-2 shows enrichment in all these (As, U, V, Cr and Sb), although not always by significant amounts. This sample was from the Waipawa Formation approximately 1 km upstream from the other samples.

The enrichment of these elements alone is not enough to confirm whether or not the formation was deposited under oxygen-depleted conditions at this location as the enrichment is not significantly higher than for other elements. REE, however, allow comparison between elements which otherwise chemically behave in a very similar way. Caesium is generally depleted under reducing conditions depleted (e.g. de Baar *et al.*, 1988; German and Elderfield, 1989; Sholkovitz *et al.*, 1992), and europium may be enriched (Sverjensky, 1984; *more details given in section 2.2*).

As Ce and Eu are enriched under opposite redox conditions, but related as REE, depth graphs of Ce/La, and Gd/Eu should show significantly lower values for reduced conditions. Figure 6.0.6 shows plots for Ce/La and Gd/Eu, the standard used (vertical line) is the North American Shale Composite (NASC), the same standard used in the results section. A-C-2 (circled in red) shows the lowest values in both Ce/La and Gd/Eu, indicating that sample A-C-2 was deposited under more oxygen depleted during deposition. While the distance between the field sites is only 1 km, a fault with
unknown displacement separates them and hence the paleogeographic distance as well as exact stratigraphic position is uncertain (see section 4.1).

**Biological components and biocycling.**

The relationship noticed on a ternary diagram of Ba, Ga and Al concentrations (figure 5.0.10) may prove to be significant to interpreting Ba results. Few studies have measured Ga, Al and Ba together in sediments. However, a comparison of one set of results from Devonian-Mississippian shales from the Western Canadian Sedimentary Basin, (Ross and Bustin, 2009) and those from Angora Quarry (this study) is given in figure 6.0.7.

The data from Ross and Bustin (2009) have a larger concentration of Al relative to both Ba and Ga, with Ba appearing to vary largely independently of Ga and Al. Ga and Ba do not appear to be related in the Western Canadian Sedimentary Basin. Whether the relationship at Angora Quarry is just a local process is uncertain. There may be background variation in both Ba and Ga in the Western Canadian Sedimentary Basin. Plots between different terrestrial indicators show large amounts of variation, K$_2$O vs Al$_2$O$_3$ for the Ross and Bustin (2009) data shows an R$^2$ correlation of 0.52, considerably...
lower than the 0.96 from this study and indicating multiple detrital sources.

Ca is largely of biological origin, and hence the EF and AE corrections using $\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3$ are not a particularly useful way of displaying the data. The depletion in Ca through the Waipawa Formation may either indicate a lack of calcareous shells being deposited or the dissolution of calcium minerals after deposition.

At Angora Quarry, the similarity between the $\text{SO}_3$ content and CaO (figure 5.0.13) is probably indicative of a decrease in the amount of marine productivity relative to the sedimentation rate. The S in the Whangai and Wanstead formations would hence be sourced from marine organic matter. Leventhal (1983) suggested that approximately 1 wt% S for every 3 wt% TOC was approximately the ratio for organic matter deposited under normal marine conditions, a value that is consistent with the TOC (figure 6.0.1) from Angora Quarry.

In the Whangai and Wanstead formation samples, Sr correlates with Ca and Al on a ternary diagram (figure 5.0.11) although many Waipawa Formation samples are depleted after a correction for both Al and Ca has been made. The cause of this depletion is unknown, and indeterminable from this study. The technique of calculating the AE of Sr using both Al and Ca values can aid in gaining a better understanding why Sr varies in organic-rich sediments and perhaps in sediments in general.

The variation of Mg with Al and Ca (5.0.12) may indicate an increase in kaolinite
or dolomite content as these are what Mg is mainly linked to in North American black shales (Ross and Bustin, 2008; 2009). Whether these minerals are causing the increased Mg or whether some other process is responsible is not shown by the data.

Germanium shows no correlation to Si, suggesting either that a significant proportion of the variation in either SiO$_2$ or Ge is not of biological origin, or that there is a second process involved.

TOC values from Leckie (1992) and S from this study can be combined to show where Angora Quarry samples would plot on an S vs TOC graph (figure 6.0.8). As Leckie (1992) did not measure TOC in the Wanstead Formation at Angora Stream, that sample has been omitted from the figure, previous values at other locations for the Wanstead Formation where included. The data are plotted alongside data from Elgar (1997) and Rogers (1995), the two previous studies which have measured S in East Coast Basin samples.

![Figure 6.0.8: S plotted against TOC to differentiate types of organic matter and deposition. S and TOC data for data points are from Rogers (1995), and Elgar (1997). The circles show S from this study plotted against TOC values from Leckie (1992). As separate samples were used by Leckie (1992) and this study, the figure shows only approximate locations with circles. Graph style after Leventhal (1993).](image)

Overall, the Waipawa and Whangai formations vary across this plot. The anoxic and oxic fields on the plot are based on the assumption that the bulk of organic matter in the anoxic section is of marine origin (Leventhal, 1993), and thus high terrestrial
organic content may move the lower constraining line for anoxic conditions to include more samples. Without analysing the origin of the S, this plot may only be able to differentiate non-marine influence and some definitely anoxic samples.

**Rare earth elements**

Overall, most of the REE are not very different from the NASC (North American Shale Composite) (figure 5.0.21) standard. However, the bell-shaped curve in A-A-13 (figure 5.1.21) showing enrichment in the middle REE is noteworthy. A similar curve was observed in apatites formed from fish and shark teeth (Lécuyer *et al*., 2004); however, even the most REE-rich apatites in this study had at the most 0.5% Ce, at this concentration 50 times more P would be required to achieve the observed Ce at angora Quarry in apatite form.

Another source for the high REE concentration in A-A-13 could be contamination of the sample by an REE rich mineral, or a detrital REE-rich mineral being fortuitously introduced during deposition.

**Summary of Angora Quarry data**

Terrestrial organic matter washed offshore was deposited in dysoxic to oxic conditions. The increased influx of terrestrial organic matter coupled with terrestrial clays caused a dilution of CaO, SiO$_2$ and marine organic matter (as indicated by the low SO$_3$). How much of the SiO$_2$ is of biogenic origin, and how much is of terrestrial origin cannot be determined from the data, sedimentary sorting could have led to a change in detrital quartz content.

The low SO$_3$ and lack of similarity between other anoxic indicators, along with an abundance of Fe$_2$O$_3$, leads to the conclusion that anoxic conditions were not present due to the lack of pyrite. Other indicators of oxygen depletion suggest that at the outcrop 1 km upstream from Angora Quarry, there was increased oxygen depletion in the water column or upper sediments during deposition; however, the level of depletion cannot be quantified. Minor oxygen depletion during the deposition of the Waipawa Formation at the Angora Quarry section cannot be ruled out, however, but is also not indicated by the inorganic geochemistry and likely would have had no effect on overall conditions of deposition of the Waipawa Formation.
6.1. Kawau-1A

Overview

TOC measurements were made for the Kawau-1A well by Meadows (2008) for the same SWC samples as studies here and his measurements are presented in figure 6.1.1.

The relationship between the gamma ray log and the detrital input appears to indicate that the gamma ray measurements can be used to approximate the terrestrial clay content (figure 5.1.1). The lower terrestrial clay content is likely to indicate that the terrestrial clays are being diluted, either by calcareous material, silicates or both.

The large influx of terrestrial clays during the deposition of the organic-rich layer agrees with the interpretation of Schiøler et al. (2010), who showed the organic matter was largely of terrestrial origin.

Terrestrial indicators

Overall, the terrestrial indicators all show a similar trend, with the greatest amount of terrestrial clays deposited during the deposition of the Tartan Formation. The lowest values are in the Laing Formation, which is more calcareous than the underlying Wickliffe and Tartan Formations (Beggs, 1993; Cook et al., 1999).

Figure 6.1.1: TOC, EF and AE plotted against depth for Kawau-1A. Absolute concentrations of TOC from Meadows (2008).
Correlation between the terrestrial indicators is shown in table 6.1.1. The $R^2$ correlation between terrestrial indicators is above 0.9 except for Th/Ta and Hf/Ta. Most of the elements correlate best to either Zr or Ti, with Rb the only exception and this correlates best with Th. Zr and Hf do not vary relative to one another, and produced the strongest correlation at 0.997. This indicating that the Kawau-1A results do not appear to have large errors when treated as fractions; as EF calculations use only fractions the EF are likely to have smaller errors than the other graphs in section 5.1.

The larger variation in Ta is mainly due to its lower concentration, with measurements between 0.19 and 0.99 ppm. Ta should correlate most closely with Nb as they behave the same way under natural processes (e.g. Ross and Bustin, 2009).

The large increase in terrestrial clay content (figure 5.1.2) indicates limited dilution from biological sources and likely very rapid deposition.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Hf</th>
<th>Zr</th>
<th>Ti</th>
<th>Nb</th>
<th>Rb</th>
<th>Ta</th>
<th>Th</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hf</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.997</td>
<td>0.979</td>
<td>0.939</td>
<td>0.939</td>
<td>0.886</td>
<td>0.941</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zr</td>
<td>0.997</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.989</td>
<td>0.952</td>
<td>0.947</td>
<td>0.914</td>
<td>0.942</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ti</td>
<td>0.979</td>
<td>0.989</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.970</td>
<td>0.967</td>
<td>0.950</td>
<td>0.950</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nb</td>
<td>0.939</td>
<td>0.952</td>
<td>0.970</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.965</td>
<td>0.935</td>
<td>0.937</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rb</td>
<td>0.939</td>
<td>0.947</td>
<td>0.967</td>
<td>0.965</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.939</td>
<td>0.958</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>0.886</td>
<td>0.914</td>
<td>0.950</td>
<td>0.935</td>
<td>0.939</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.862</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Th</td>
<td>0.941</td>
<td>0.942</td>
<td>0.950</td>
<td>0.937</td>
<td>0.958</td>
<td>0.862</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6.1.1: $R^2$ correlation of terrestrial indicators in Kawau-1A. Grey shading indicates the best correlation for the element. See text for discussion.

**Anoxic indicators (sedimentary pyrite)**

Some of the elements included as traces within sedimentary pyrite (Mo, Ni and, in one sample, Cu) are enriched in the Tartan Formation to varying degrees, but the remaining elements which should also be enriched in pyrite do not show significant enrichment (figures 5.1.3, 5.1.4, 5.1.6 and 5.1.7). Many elements, however, are affected by multiple processes and it may be possible that very rapid deposition diluted the effect of anoxic conditions on the inorganic geochemistry of the Tartan Formation. Unfortunately, insufficient sample remained to allow measurement of sulphur concentrations by XRF.
It cannot be conclusively said from the limited trace element data available whether or not the water was anoxic during deposition of the Tartan Formation in Kawau-1A, although it is unlikely.

**Oxygen depletion**

Mn and Co (figure 5.1.7) show no significant signs of depletion through the Tartan Formation; however, As, U, V, Cr, and Se are all enriched through the Tartan Formation. As and U, may also be enriched in the uppermost sample (figure 5.1.8, 5.1.9). Sb is the only indicator which is normally enriched under conditions of oxygen depletion which here does not show enrichment, and in this case Sb behaves in a similar way to Bi.

Overall the bulk of the elements measured suggest that oxygen-depleted conditions existed during the deposition of the Tartan Formation. While no depletion can be shown in Mn and Co, the amounts of these elements present are already very low, compared to average shale which has 850 ppm Mn and 19 ppm Co. It may be the case that the conditions were already suboxic prior to Tartan Formation time and that Mn depletion was already occurring in the Laing and Wickliffe formations.

**Biological components and biocyling**

Ni is the only element of this group which is enriched in both samples of the Tartan Formation (figure 5.1.6) while Cu is enriched in the upper Tartan Formation sample. Cadmium, Tl and Ni are show increases in AE and EF in the uppermost sample of the Laing Formation. Without being able to link Ca to Sr it is not possible to say anything definite about the Sr concentration.

Increases in Cu and Ni were also noticed in some of the samples in Angora Quarry and are on a similar scale to those observed in Kawau-1A, while the lack of variation in Cd apparent in Kawau-1A may be due to the limited numbers of samples. While Kawau-1A and Angora Quarry do not show the same variations in trace elements, the resolution is different and it cannot be determined whether or not the biological conditions were similar from trace metals alone.
Rarely studied elements

Tungsten behaves in a similar way to Bi at Kawau-1A (figure 5.1.12), which may suggest that Bi and W are affected by similar processes. The processes involved with Bi variations in sedimentary environments are uncertain, however, and W has been excluded in all such previous studies. The variation of Sn is different to all other elements in Kawau-1A, but the processes which affect it are unknown.

Rare Earth Elements

While REE were not measured, Y is affected the same chemically (e.g. Haskin and Gehl, 1962). Y was enriched through the Tartan Formation (figure 5.1.13). In the other samples, Y behaves like a terrestrial indicator. Without having any REE measured in this site, nothing can be said about the source of the REE apart from the suggestion that they are probably affected by more than just detrital input.

Summary of Kawau-1A

Samples from Kawau-1A were deposited in the more distal setting of the two Great South Basin wells studied here. The Tartan Formation in the well is characterised by high gamma ray levels, and the concentration of terrestrial indicators follows a similar trend to the GR log.

Fully anoxic conditions during deposition of the Tartan Formation appear unlikely, with no agreement across the data, such conditions cannot be completely ruled out. An increase in concentrations of the trace metals As, U, Cr and Se through the Tartan Formation does indicate that the Tartan Formation was deposited under oxygen depleted conditions in Kawau-1A.

It should be noted that the SWC samples of the Tartan Formation were taken during drilling operations from horizons identified by gamma ray spikes within the formation. Sedimentary and geochemical conditions between these samples, where the GR log is on average 20-30 api units lower, are unknown as no sidewall samples exist from these levels.
6.2. Pakaha-1

Overview

TOC measurements were made for the Pakaha-1 well by Meadows (2008) and are presented here in figure 6.2.1. These measurements are from the same SWC samples as those analyzed in the present study.

The GR log again matches the terrestrial background (figure 5.2.1), and there is far less variation in both the gamma ray signal and terrestrial background observed in this well. This has previously been interpreted as indicating a more rapid rate of deposition and higher terrestrial influx due to the more proximal location of the Pakaha-1 well during the Late Paleocene (e.g. Schiøler et al., 2010).

![Figure 6.2.1: TOC, EF and AE plotted against depth for Pakaha-1. Absolute concentration of TOC is from Meadows (2008)](image)

Terrestrial indicators

Significantly less variation is seen within each of the terrestrial indicators than in Kawau-1A, and this lower range also corresponds to significantly lower $R^2$ values (table 6.2.1). While most of the terrestrial indicators show only slight variation, Rb behaves completely independently to the other terrestrial indicators in Pakaha-1, and hence shows no correlation.

Zirconium and Hf again show the strongest correlation. The spike in Rb is unexpected (figure 5.2.2), and it is not easily explained. Only Tl has a similar variation
(figure 5.2.7). While Rb changes bear some resemblance to those of the TOC, they do not directly correlate with it. The cause of the spike in Rb hence remains unknown.

Anoxic indicators (sedimentary pyrite)

There is no indication of sedimentary pyrite in the Tartan Formation sample, although the sample immediately above the formation has a spike in Mo, Bi, Cu, Cd, Ni and Co which are incorporated in sedimentary pyrite (figures 5.2.3, 5.2.4, 5.2.6, 5.2.8). This sample was taken at a narrow but pronounced gamma ray spike (figure 5.2.1). Mn, Tl, and Pb can be included into sedimentary pyrite but are not enriched in this sample. As all the other elements which indicate sedimentary pyrite are enriched, indicating that sedimentary pyrite was in fact deposited in this sample.

Schiøler et al., (2010) suggested that the deposition of the Tartan Formation began earlier in relation to eustatic sea level at Pakaha-1 than elsewhere. If so, it is thus possible that at Pakaha-1 the Tartan Formation was deposited during prior to deposition of the Tartan elsewhere in the basin, sediments later largely bypassed Pakaha-1 while the Tartan Formation was being deposited elsewhere. Increased productivity due to the influx of micro nutrients would be needed to lead to anoxic conditions for the sample above the Tartan Formation.

An earlier pulse is not inconsistent with the literature, several previous authors suggested that the Waipawa and Tartan formations consist of two pulses of organic matter-rich sediment, sometimes separated by a more calcareous unit. The best example of a section where the Waipawa Formation is certainly divided into two parts is Mead Stream (Hollis et al., 2005a), or two pulses in TOC content such as at Angora Quarry.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Hf</th>
<th>Zr</th>
<th>Nb</th>
<th>Ta</th>
<th>Th</th>
<th>Ti</th>
<th>Rb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hf</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.967</td>
<td>0.819</td>
<td>0.693</td>
<td>0.677</td>
<td>0.679</td>
<td>0.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zr</td>
<td>0.967</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.616</td>
<td>0.636</td>
<td>0.712</td>
<td>0.819</td>
<td>0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nb</td>
<td>0.819</td>
<td>0.616</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.958</td>
<td>0.937</td>
<td>0.629</td>
<td>0.002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>0.693</td>
<td>0.636</td>
<td>0.958</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.882</td>
<td>0.582</td>
<td>0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Th</td>
<td>0.677</td>
<td>0.712</td>
<td>0.937</td>
<td>0.882</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.770</td>
<td>0.013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ti</td>
<td>0.679</td>
<td>0.819</td>
<td>0.629</td>
<td>0.582</td>
<td>0.770</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rb</td>
<td>0.003</td>
<td>0.001</td>
<td>0.002</td>
<td>0.001</td>
<td>0.013</td>
<td>0.021</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6.2.1: R² correlation for the terrestrial indicators in Pakaha-1. Grey shading indicates the best correlation for the element. See text for discussion.
Oxygen depletion

No elements indicate oxygen depletion during the deposition of the Tartan Formation in Pakaha-1, although enrichments in As, U, V, Sb, Se, and Mn indicate oxygen depletion in the sample above the Tartan Formation (figures 5.2.8, 5.2.9, 5.2.10). This agrees with the anoxic indicators which suggest no oxygen and the precipitation of sedimentary pyrite during deposition of this sample.

Biological components and biocycling

Interpreting Sr values without Ca is difficult. In Pakaha-1 Sr values significantly higher than were recorded at any other site were encountered in the uppermost sample. If the Sr was mainly of biological origin, and was at the same ratio of Sr to Ca as at Angora Quarry, the uppermost sample would have to contain 48% calcite. This amount is unlikely given that neither the GR log nor the concentrations of terrestrial indicators indicate any dilution of the terrestrially-sourced component. This sample also has an unusually high concentration of Mn, at 400 ppm.

There is a spike in the Tl concentration in samples from the Tartan Formation which can be correlated to Rb with an $R^2$ of 0.88 (figure 5.2.7); however, there are few data points and there is little spread, thus whether or not Tl and Rb are controlled by the same process in Pakaha-1 cannot be confirmed.

Rarely studied elements

Tungsten is significantly enriched in the sample directly above the Tartan Formation but shows very little variation in all the other samples. This suggests that W is affected by some process. W is a chalcophile element, hence the process is probably sedimentary pyrite precipitation. Sn is enriched in the Tartan Formation in Pakaha-1, although there is no clear reason as to why this happened and variations in Sn have been little studied. The concentration is relatively constant in the other samples once the terrestrial input was corrected for.

Rare earth elements

Yttrium behaves like REEs; it shows little variation through the section,
suggesting that it is sourced largely from detrital input. Measurement of more rare earth elements is needed.

**Summary of Pakaha-1**

There is no indication of oxygen depletion during the deposition of the Tartan Formation at Pakaha-1; however, the sample above the Tartan Formation which corresponds with a sharp gamma ray spike appears to indicate anoxic conditions during deposition. The anoxic sample in the Pakaha-1 well also corresponds with the highest terrestrial input, although it contains only a low TOC content.

**6.3. Regional depositional environment**

This section will draw on data from this and previous studies to suggest a depositional environment for Waipawa and Tartan formations on both a local and regional scale.

**East Coast Basin trace element work from Elgar (1997)**

A plot of Rb against Th from Elgar (1997) and Moore (1980) (figure 6.3.1) was used to identify whether the regional East Coast Basin trace metal data could be used together. As both Th and Rb are of detrital origin at Angora Quarry ($R^2$ of 0.922), if the mineralogy remains constant across the basin they should plot in a straight line.

The variation in Rb/Th suggests that there are at least two separate detrital sediment sources with different Rb/Th ratios. Elgar (1997) sampled a wide range of different formations, including the Waipawa Formaiton throughout the East Coast Basin. Without a larger range of terrestrial indicators identifying which variations in other elements are due to the terrestrial component and which are due to oceanic conditions it is not possible to extract new data from his study.

While a vague linear trend may exist in the non-Waipawa samples, this is uncertain, and does not appear to pass through zero, more measurements would need to be done to investigate this.
Summary of results

Terrestrial indicators indicate an increase in the abundance of terrestrial clays during deposition of the Tartan and Waipawa formations. This was previously suggested as one of several potential causes of the gamma ray spike by Schiøler et al., (2010), and was confirmed in this study. Other proposed causes of the gamma ray spike were discussed in section 1.1.

Low Ca abundance through the Waipawa Formation was found at the Angora Quarry section, and is in line with XRF measurements have been made previously on two Waipawa Formation samples by Moore (1988), suggesting this is a more regional phenomena.

Variation in the redox equilibria under which the formation was deposited depended on locality, as first suggested in a S vs. TOC plot by Elgar, (1993) for the East Coast Basin. This was later supported by Schiøler et al., (2010) based on AOM-phytoclast-polynomorph kerogen plots for the Great South Basin. The present study confirmed that redox conditions change with locality for the deposition of the Waipawa
and Tartan formations.

Water depth at the time of deposition is unknown. It has been suggested that the Tartan Formation was deposited in 0-20 m water depth (Raine et al., 1993; Cook et al., 1999; Schiøler et al., 2010). Shallow hypersaline conditions were suggested due to the presence of a low-diversity foraminiferal fauna including *Cyclammina elegans* and abundant terrestrial organic matter (Schiøler et al., 2010). However, the oxygen depletion seen in Kawau-1A within the Tartan Formation and the anoxic indicators directly above the Tartan Formation in Pakaha-1 would have required deposition below the mixing caused by waves (e.g. Demaison and Moore, 1980), suggesting waters significantly deeper than 50 m.

The Waipawa Formation was likely deposited at a very rapid rate at Angora Quarry, leading to similarities between CaO and SO$_3$ abundances due to dilution with terrestrial clays and terrestrial organic matter, and burying the organic matter before it could be biologically degraded. Without anoxic conditions, only rapid burial can preserve organic matter (Gavrilov et al. 1997). It is likely that the formation was also deposited rapidly in the Great South Basin as the gamma ray peaks correspond to intervals of maximum terrestrial sediment supply.

Supporting a rapid depositional rate is the low amount of enrichment in oxygen depleted samples in comparison to Brumsack (2006). Redox depletion can enrich elements by several orders of magnitude, however, even in the Pakaha-1 sample which contained anoxic indicators Mo shows only an enrichment factor of 2, in comparison to 2-3 orders of magnitude in Brumsack (2006). The difference in results to present day depositional environments makes present day analogues to the depositional environment impossible.

**Possible depositional environments**

1) Schiøler et al., (2010) suggested the Waipawa and Tartan formations are regressive units due to the increasing non-marine proxies, with the top of the Tartan Formation representing a Maximum Regressive Surface. They suggested that a fall in sea level caused a base level drop and erosion provided the terrestrial material.

Beggs (2010a, b) suggested that the Waipounamu Erosion Surface which followed the cessation of sea-floor spreading indicated a “broad domain up-warping,” in which
large parts of the New Zealand continent were uplifted and eroded. This may have provided the mechanism to uplift and erode swamps, giving the high terrestrial input, and causing the maximum regression suggested by Schiøler et al., (2010).

2) An alternative explanation is suggested by this study. A marine transgression might have flooded coastal swamps and re-deposited the organic matter offshore. This model is suggested by the present study due to the indication of oxygen depletion during deposition of the Tartan Formation in the Great South Basin wells, which in turn indicates undisturbed and deeper waters.

Increased influx of detrital sediments during transgression is known to occur in New Zealand sediments elsewhere during the Tertiary; for example, increased aluminosilicates producing marl beds during the deposition of the Amuri Limestone have been linked to marine transgressions in the Early Eocene (e.g. Nicolo et al., 2007).

An organic matter-rich shale up to several m thick and extensive over 2500km was deposited during the IETM (Initial Eocene Thermal Maximum) in the southern territory of the former Soviet Union (Gavrliov et al., 1997; 2000; 2003). This sapropelic unit contained large amounts of terrestrial organic matter and decreases in carbonate content, and other similarities in trace metal content, making it the closest analogy found for the inorganic geochemistry of the Waipawa Formation. This organic matter-rich shale has been interpreted as a transgression unit which was preceded by a regression. With peat swamps and bogs present along the shoreline, eustatic sea level transgression caused flooding and rapid erosion, depositing a thin layer of organic matter across the basin and causing anoxic conditions.

Due to the widespread but unique nature of the Tartan and Waipawa formations in the Late Paleocene to Early Eocene sediments, the relative sea level change must have been a unique event whether the transgression suggested herein or regression suggested by Schiøler et al., (2010) occurred. Regional tectonic events as suggested by Beggs (2010a, b) may have played a roll in the sediment deposition but other evidence has yet to be presented proving specific tectonic events were synchronous with the deposition.
Comparison of depositional environments

Either a transgression or a regression may have caused the influx of terrestrial organic matter into the Waipawa and Tartan formations. Both models invoke erosion of terrestrial organic matter, and both models can cause increased marine productivity due to increased nutrients and the increased influx of terrestrial clays. A transgression also allows for increased productivity close to shore with the resulting organic matter being washed offshore along with the terrestrial organic matter.

The microfossil assemblages which indicate 0-20 m water depth (Raine et al., 1993) are explainable by a transgression regression if water depths are this shallow; however, a transgression may have reworked shallow sediments such as peats and swamps were eroded, depositing reworked shallow water sediments and terrestrial matter at greater water depths.

For ocean floor environments to be oxygen depleted, vertical mixing must be restricted by stratification (Tyson and Pearson, 1991). At shallow depths oxygen depletion only occurs seasonally, and only where there is restricted wave action. Without the re-oxygenation and reversal of many trace metal processes having occurred, sections of the Tartan and Waipawa formations which were deposited under oxygen-depleted conditions were likely deposited at water depths greater than 50 metres. Kawau-1A shows some indications for oxygen depletion, whereas Pakaha-1 shows anoxic conditions in the sample directly above the Tartan Formation. Schiøler et al. (2010) suggested in Toroa-1 that the Tartan Formation was deposited under dysoxic to anoxic conditions. The deposition of Te Uri member greensand as time equivalents to the Waipawa Formation was interpreted by Rogers et al. (2001) as representing oxic bottom waters, in comparison to the Waipawa Formation representing anoxic conditions resulting from a regional upwelling as suggested by Killops et al. (2000).

Under a transgressive model, the greensands which are equivalent in time to the Waipawa Formation may represent a sediment bypass, and / or regions where near-shore swamps did not exist. At some locations such as Te Hoe River, both the Te Uri greensand unit is present as well as the Waipawa Formation (Leckie et al., 1992 appendix II). This may be related to the double pulse of the Waipawa Formation observed elsewhere. Under modern conditions glaconite is generally formed in low-energy conditions at mid-shelf to deeper-water environments (e.g. Dias and Nittrouer, 1984), hence glauconite equivalents to the Tartan and Waipawa formations fit better
with a marine transgression.

Difficulty in constraining the dates under which the Waipawa and Tartan formations were deposited as well as sea level changes has left much debate about whether the formation is transgressive or regressive. Figure 6.3.2 shows two different sea level curves along with different age constraints for the age of the Waipawa Formation. The Waipawa Formation may have been deposited very rapidly due to the low CaO and SO$_3$ concentrations, at Angora Quarry the Waipawa Formation contains 27 times less CaO than the surrounding formation, and at least 10 times less SO$_3$ (assuming the maximum of 0.01 wt% when below the 0.01 wt% minimum detection level).

The rate of deposition of the Waipawa Formation at Angora Quarry cannot be quantified and can only be inferred as very rapid; it is probably well below the resolution of the sea level curves from figure 6.3.2. Without direct indicators of sea level change, neither the Schiøler et al., (2010), nor the transgressive model proposed by this study can be ruled out.

![Figure 6.3.2](image-url)

Figure 6.3.2: Two sea level curves in green and red, and the estimated age ranges for the Waipawa Formation in different shades of grey, see text for discussion. Sea level data from Van Sickel et al., (2004).
Summary

Reduced oxygen content in the water column can be ruled out as the forcing factor behind the deposition of the Tartan and Waipawa formations, as can extremely shallow water depths which preclude oxygen depletion.

Both transgressive and regressive sea level change are able to explain the deposition of the Tartan and Waipawa Formation; however, the increased terrestrial content of the sediment indicates transgression with increased erosion. On a regional scale, transgression better explains the glauconite content and localised reducing conditions.

The anoxic conditions in Pakaha-1 also correspond to an increased terrestrial component. Such anoxic conditions suggest that depths were likely significantly deeper than 50 metres, and possibly several hundred metres deep.

A regressive model cannot be ruled out, but overall a transgressive model appears to fit better with the geochemical properties of the Waipawa Formation, with increased terrestrial input coming from erosion of nearshore swamps.

6.4. Discussion of trace metals

Effects of thermal maturation on trace metals

The Waipawa Formation has been the source of oil in several New Zealand Basins, including that in the Kora structure in the Taranaki Basin (Killops et al., 1994) and the Waitangi oil seeps in the East Coast Basin (Rogers et al., 1999). Frankenberger (1994) measured trace elements in oils from both Kora and the Waitangi oil seep, and a comparison between the TM content of the oil and of the Waipawa Formation at Angora Quarry is shown in figure 6.4.1.

Overall none of the elements which were measured both in this study and by Frankenberger (1994) were present in high concentrations in the oils. Having lower concentrations in the oil than in the rocks suggests that the overall mass lost though oil expulsion has the net affect of increasing trace element concentration in the mature source rock; however, this effect is very small.
This is a simplification as the oil has migrated, there is potential for the composition of the oils to have changed during migration, and the concentration of elements within the Waipawa Formation may vary from place to place.
Chapter 7

Conclusions

7.0. Angora Quarry section.

- There was no significant change in redox conditions during the deposition of the Angora Quarry section of the Waipawa Formation. This rules out anoxic conditions caused by upwelling, as suggested in the model of Killops et al., (2000) for deposition of the Waipawa Formation.

- The section 1 km upstream from Angora Quarry was somewhat oxygen-depleted in comparison to samples in the quarry. This assessment is based on the enrichment in As, V, U, Cr, Ag, Sb and Se in both AE and EF graphs, as well as the significantly lower Ce/La and Gd/Eu ratios than in all other samples. The paleogeographic distance, and exact stratigraphic relationship is unknown, however, as the two sets of samples are separated by a fault.

- Low CaO and SO$_3$ concentrations through the Waipawa Formation at Angora Quarry indicate very rapid deposition with little biological calcite and with little marine organic matter indicated by the low sulphur. Terrestrial clays increase through the section, as indicated by the Al$_2$O$_3$.

- SO$_3$ from this study together with TOC values from Leckie (1992) indicate that the organic matter from the Waipawa Formation is largely of terrestrial origin. This agrees with data presented by Elgar (1997), who found 90% structured organic matter in his sample from Angora Quarry in a visual kerogen analysis. Al$_2$O$_3$ values sorted by colour of the sample as an indicator of TOC content shows that the terrestrial clay content covaries with colour and by extension likely with TOC.

- There is no evidence for a change in terrestrially sourced minerals; the ratios of the detrital elements remain largely constant. However there is larger amounts of terrestrially sourced elements during the deposition of the Waipawa Formation.
7.1. Kawau-1A.

- The gamma ray spike characteristic of the Tartan Formation can be correlated in the Great South Basin well Kawau-1A with purely detritally-sourced elements, suggesting that it is indicative of increased terrestrial input.
- Kawau-1A was deposited under oxygen-depleted conditions; however it is unlikely the conditions were completely anoxic due to the absence of sedimentary pyrite.
- Similarities in the scale of variations between Ni and Cu in the Tartan Formation at Kawau-1A and the Waipawa Formation at Angora Quarry where observed. With only two samples at Kawau-1A confirming whether this correlates is impossible.
- Similarly to Angora Quarry, no change in sediment source was noticed, however there is a variation of a factor of 5 in the amount of terrestrial indicators in individual samples.

7.2. Pakaha-1.

- The gamma ray log correlated with the detritally-sourced elements, confirming the correlation noticed in Kawau-1A.
- Only material from one sample in the Tartan Formation remained in Pakaha-1 to be analysed, in this sample there was no indication of oxygen depletion.
- The sample above the Tartan Formation in Pakaha-1 contained indicators for both oxygen depletion (enhanced As, U, V, Sb and Se) and anoxic conditions (enhanced Mo, Bi, Cu, Cd, Ni and Co), indicating it was likely deposited under anoxic conditions.
- A spike in Rb was noticed in the Tartan Formation sample, the cause of this is uncertain, it may indicate a different terrestrial mineralogy or may indicate the presence of a single mineral which due to the small sample size caused a large spike. The Rb measurement may be related to Tl with an $R^2$ correlation of 0.88.
7.3. Depositional environment.

- Oxic conditions during deposition of the Waipawa and Tartan formations at Angora Quarry and at Pakaha-1 do not fit with the upwelling model proposed by Killiops et al., (2000).

- Time-equivalent glauconitic sandstones to the Waipawa and Tartan formations, and the dysoxic conditions in the shallow suggested depositional environment in the Great South Basin are difficult to reconcile with the regressive model of deposition proposed by Schiøler et al., (2010).

- The present study supports a transgressive model where rising sea level flooded low-lying swamps and peats. Rapid erosion and redeposition diluted the biological CaO and SiO$_2$ contents at Angora Quarry. In the Great South Basin, the foraminifera Cyclammina elegans is interpreted as indicating 0-20m water depth by Raine et al., (1993). However, oxygen depletion must be significantly below wave base, a depth significantly deeper than 50 m is suggested for oxygen depletion by Demaison and Moore (1980). The erosion of peat swamps during transgression may have limited deposition of sediments in the shallow water with shallow water indicators washed into deeper waters.

  Increased terrestrial clays are often indicators of marine transgressions, as is also observed later in the Early Eocene as marl layers in the Amuri Limestone (e.g. Nicolo et al., 2007).

- The overall low enrichment factors in samples which were deposited under oxygen-depleted conditions are orders of magnitude lower than those presented by Brumsack (2006), and may indicate very rapid deposition with no present day analogue. The closest analogue found was an Early Eocene unit (Gravilov et al. 1997) on which the transgressive model proposed in this thesis is based.

7.4. Trace metals in sediments.

- Defining the local background is rarely done in the literature; however, local background can vary significantly from “average shale” and other standards. Without
defining local backgrounds, comparisons across regions cannot be done without introducing biases into the data.

- The large variation in detrital element concentration at Kawau-1A shows the difference between the enrichment factor (EF) and the absolute enrichment (AE) formula, especially in regards to the uppermost sample. While EF data has been the conventional way of displaying data, in regions where background content varies the use of AE is more appropriate.

- Ternary diagrams provide a useful way to calculate absolute enrichments of elements affected by multiple processes. Intersection points on the ternary diagram allow the effects of some processes to be quantified, (e.g. biological Ca/Sr ratio), and the identification of other processes which form straight lines on a ternary diagrams may aid in working out which processes occurred in ancient sediments during deposition

- Ga and Ba behave in a similar way, and at Angora Quarry they appear to be affected by the same two processes, detrital input and biological enrichment. On a ternary diagram Ga, Ba and Al₂O₃ plotted in a straight line, with an R² coefficient of 0.97. The relationship between Ba and Ga could not be confirmed in other localities however, and variation in detrital background composition is a problem.

- Previous studies have not included W among the trace elements measured. In the present study, Kawau-1A showed a direct correlation between W and Bi with an R² coefficient of 0.93. In contrast, Pakaha-1 showed no such correlation, although a peak in W occurred in the sample above the Tartan Formation, the same sample with enrichment in Bi and other anoxic indicators. W thus appears to behave in a similar way to Bi, and to show enrichment in sedimentary pyrite. As W is a chalcophile element, enrichment in pyrite is expected.

- Comparison of the trace metal concentrations of three oils sourced from the Waipawa Formation with the average concentration of the same elements in the Waipawa Formation at Angora Quarry indicates that oils have between one and five orders of magnitude lower concentrations. Assuming concentrations did not vary much during migration, oil expulsion would have only a minor effect on source rock trace metal concentrations through a minor loss of mass.
7.5. Future work.

This study raises several questions which require future work on both the Waipawa Formation and on trace metals in general.

- Other evidence for sea level change around New Zealand during the deposition of the Waipawa Formation should be examined, to confirm either the transgressive or regressive model.
- More inorganic geochemistry studies on the Waipawa Formation are needed to better understand the lateral variations in the lithology. Studies would have to be conducted on sequences through the Waipawa Formation, including samples where possible from both the adjacent Whangai and Wanstead formations.
- Investigation should be made into whether the REE anomaly in the A-A-13 sample at Angora Quarry is just a local phenomenon or whether it occurs elsewhere.
- Ga and Al measurements should be included in studies of Ba to determine whether the relationship noted on ternary diagrams here can be used to better correct data for detrital Ba content.
- Further investigation of the impact on trace metal concentrations in source rocks to the trace metals in oils needs to be made to investigate the impacts on thermal maturity on trace metal content. Bitumen extracted directly from a known source rock may prove useful for this.
- Re, Ag, and Au are indicators of oxygen depletion but were below significance level when measured. They showed similar trends to related elements and future work could look at measuring these more accurately in the Waipawa and Tartan Formations.
References


Finlay H.J. 1940. New Zealand Foraminifera: Key Species in Stratigraphy, No. 4. *Transactions of the Royal Society of New Zealand*, 69, 448-472


Herut B., Gavrieli I., and Halicz L. 1997. Sources and distribution of trace and minor elements in the western Dead Sea surface sediments. *Applied Geochemistry, 12, 497-505.*


Hollis C.J., Field B.D., Crouch E.M., Sykes R. 2006. How good a source rock is the Waipawa (Black Shale) Formation beyond the East Coast Basin? An outcrop-


Schiøler P., Rogers K., Sykes R., Hollis C.J., Ilg B., Meadows D., Roncaglia L., Uruski C. 2010. Palynofacies, organic geochemistry and depositional environ-


578,000 years: results from Al/Ti, and K/Al. *Paleoceanography*, 15/2, 210-228.
# Appendix A

## Previous S and TOC data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sample</th>
<th>Formation</th>
<th>S%</th>
<th>TOC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>KR1</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>1.71</td>
<td>4.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR128</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>0.59</td>
<td>3.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR13</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>2.03</td>
<td>4.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR14</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>1.62</td>
<td>4.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR15</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>2.50</td>
<td>3.78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR16</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>2.62</td>
<td>3.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR17</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>1.97</td>
<td>1.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR20</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>1.40</td>
<td>5.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR44</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>1.29</td>
<td>5.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR46</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>1.28</td>
<td>3.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR54</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>1.20</td>
<td>2.89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR7</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>2.01</td>
<td>4.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR93</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>1.17</td>
<td>1.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR12</td>
<td>Wanstead</td>
<td>0.42</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR18</td>
<td>Wanstead</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>0.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR26</td>
<td>Wanstead</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>0.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR33</td>
<td>Wanstead</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR42</td>
<td>Wanstead</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>0.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR5</td>
<td>Wanstead</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>0.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR8</td>
<td>Wanstead</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>0.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR134</td>
<td>Whangai (POR)</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR113</td>
<td>Whangai (RAK)</td>
<td>0.83</td>
<td>0.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR121</td>
<td>Whangai (RAK)</td>
<td>1.24</td>
<td>0.87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR28</td>
<td>Whangai (RAK)</td>
<td>1.14</td>
<td>0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR29</td>
<td>Whangai (RAK)</td>
<td>1.01</td>
<td>0.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR30</td>
<td>Whangai (RAK)</td>
<td>1.11</td>
<td>0.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR31</td>
<td>Whangai (RAK)</td>
<td>1.02</td>
<td>1.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR32</td>
<td>Whangai (RAK)</td>
<td>1.20</td>
<td>0.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR55</td>
<td>Whangai (RAK)</td>
<td>0.34</td>
<td>0.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR6</td>
<td>Whangai (RAK)</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>0.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR9</td>
<td>Whangai (RAK)</td>
<td>1.24</td>
<td>0.96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR100</td>
<td>Whangai (UCM)</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>0.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR49</td>
<td>Whangai (UCM)</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>1.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR57</td>
<td>Whangai (UCM)</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>1.26</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sample</th>
<th>Formation</th>
<th>S%</th>
<th>TOC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NE131</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>0.58</td>
<td>3.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE23</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>4.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE26</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>1.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE31</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>1.90</td>
<td>3.69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE33</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>1.39</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE37</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>1.86</td>
<td>2.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE4</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>1.61</td>
<td>1.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE40</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>1.14</td>
<td>3.89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE43</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>1.01</td>
<td>5.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE44</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>3.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE45</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>4.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE48</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>0.47</td>
<td>3.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE54</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>5.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE63</td>
<td>Waipawa</td>
<td>1.23</td>
<td>3.79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE1</td>
<td>Waipawa??</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>0.77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE141</td>
<td>Wanstead</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE18</td>
<td>Wanstead</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE22</td>
<td>Wanstead?</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>0.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE55</td>
<td>Wanstead</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE58</td>
<td>Wanstead</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>0.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE62</td>
<td>Wanstead</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE49</td>
<td>Whangai</td>
<td>0.41</td>
<td>0.96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE50</td>
<td>Whangai</td>
<td>0.39</td>
<td>0.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE53</td>
<td>Whangai</td>
<td>0.65</td>
<td>0.88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE56</td>
<td>Whangai</td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>0.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE32</td>
<td>Whangai (other)</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>0.73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE121</td>
<td>Whangai (RAK)</td>
<td>0.80</td>
<td>1.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE136</td>
<td>Whangai (RAK)</td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>1.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE144</td>
<td>Whangai (RAK)</td>
<td>0.90</td>
<td>1.64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE24</td>
<td>Whangai (UCM)</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE46</td>
<td>Whangai (UCM)</td>
<td>0.61</td>
<td>0.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE113</td>
<td>Whangai (UCM)</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE111</td>
<td>Whangai?</td>
<td>0.39</td>
<td>0.76</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Rogers (1995)  
Elgar (1997)
Preliminary study on Kawau-1A

Trace metal variations through the Tartan Formation,
Kawau-1A, Great South Basin, New Zealand: Implications for
the depositional environment.

Abstract

The Tartan Formation is a Late Paleocene organic-rich mudstone found in the Great South and Canterbury basins. It is often considered to be the lateral equivalent of the Waipawa Formation which occurs in many sedimentary basins New Zealand-wide and is an important hydrocarbon source rock. The depositional environment of the Tartan and Waipawa formations has been of much debate; however, it has been generally accepted that anoxia is the most likely explanation for the high organic matter preservation. In the Great South Basin limited availability of samples from hydrocarbon exploration wells and the lack of outcrops hinder detailed analyses of the Tartan Formation.

The cause of the anoxia is unclear and studies have reached different conclusions. Recent research has identified much of the organic matter as terrestrial, and suggested a possible change in sediment source causing the organic matter enrichment. This differs from earlier studies which have generally considered the organic matter to be of predominantly marine origin. Whether an influx of organic matter caused the anoxia or whether the anoxia was caused by something else and then allowed better organic matter preservation is currently uncertain.

This study used inductively coupled plasma mass spectrometry (ICP-MS), to examine trace metal variations in eight side wall cores from the Kawau-1A exploration well in order to examine the depositional environment of the Tartan Formation. The results show significant enrichments in 26 of the 32 trace metals measured throughout the Tartan Formation, but when normalised to the background detrital concentrations, both enrichments and depletions are noticed.

The highly accurate ICP-MS equipment allowed measurement of twelve of the trace metals.
metals which are not routinely measured in sediments (Bi, Nb, Hf, Rb, Sb, Sn, Sr, Ta, Tl, W, Y and Zr). Many of these have no removal mechanism suggested are poorly understood, or very rarely fractionated in nature. The concentration of those elements which are rarely fractionated in nature can be used to normalise the other trace metal concentrations. As Al was too highly concentrated to be measured by ICP-MS, enrichment factors in this study were calculated using Hf, Zr and Ti. As this is a new technique this approach will be examined in more detail during the thesis research.

Of particular interest is the enrichment of both Zr and Hf by more than a factor of two. As these elements generally do not fractionate in nature, anoxia is probably not responsible for the enrichments. Thus a change in sediment source or a change in sediment sorting would be more likely models to explain their enrichments.

The enrichment factors are generally on a smaller scale than those reported from studies on other black shales. This may indicate rapid deposition allowing less time for redox, biological and early diagenetic enrichment processes to affect the sediments, and/or a different depositional environment from the standard models for black shale enrichments.

1.0 Introduction

The Tartan Formation is an organic-rich mudstone found in the Great South and Canterbury basins. It is laterally equivalent to the Waipawa Formation which is considered to have been deposited on the outer shelf to upper slope environment around Late Paleocene New Zealand (Killops et al., 2000).

The depositional environment of the Tartan Formation is of particular interest due to previous studies not having reached a consensus on the paleoceanographic facies that the Tartan and Waipawa formations represent. Aspects of the depositional environment such as relative sea level are uncertain, and it is unknown whether the Tartan Formation represents high stand, regressive, or transgressive sea level change. Schiøler and Roncaglia (2008) suggested that all these interpretations of relative sea level were plausible.

A recent study by Schiøler et al. (2010) suggested that deposition of the Tartan
Formation occurred during peak regression in the Thanetian. This conclusion was reached through study of a broad range of aspects of the Tartan Formation including type of organic matter.

Aspects such as the oxygen availability during deposition are of particular interest due to high total organic carbon (TOC) values (e.g. Meadows, 2008). Most authors have suggested an anoxic environment possibly linked to a regional upwelling, but except for the high TOC values, direct evidence of anoxia has not so far been found in the Tartan Formation.

Trace metal variations are complex and governed by redox sensitivity, biological cycling, diagenetic processes, and the precipitation of other minerals (e.g. sulphates and phosphates) at the sediment water interface (e.g. Brumsack, 2006; Ross and Bustin, 2009; Turgeon and Brumsack, 2006).

This project is a preliminary study of trace metal variations in the Tartan Formation, focusing on samples from the Kawau-1A hydrocarbon exploration well in the Great South Basin. This well is one of five wells in the Great South Basin which encountered the Tartan Formation. The present study examined a comprehensive suite of trace elements in order to assess the feasibility of examining enrichments in trace metals through the Tartan Formation.

2.0 Kawau-1A: summary

Kawau-1A was drilled in 1977 by Hunt International Petroleum Co NZ. The well was located 250 km south-south-east of Stewart Island, in ~680 m water depth. The well was drilled to 3826 mrkb (meters below rotary kelly bushing), encountering the Tartan Formation between 2220 and 2264 mrkb (Cook et al., 1999).

Kawau-1A has more available side wall core material from the Tartan and adjacent formations than other exploration wells in the Great South Basin, and thus was chosen for this preliminary study. The wells were all drilled more than 30 years ago, and many other studies have used up the bulk of the side wall core material.
Four side wall cores (SWC) runs were made at different times during the drilling; the samples in and around the Tartan Formation are from the fourth run only (Table 1). Samples 23/4 and 24/4 were not analysed as all the side wall core material had been previously used up.

Samples from Kawau-1A have been used in many studies, including that of Meadows (2008) who measured %C, %N, δ^{13}C, and TOC. No comprehensive trace or major element work has yet been carried out on these side wall core samples.

An accurate age is not known for samples of either the Tartan or laterally equivalent Waipawa Formation. The best estimate is that the deposition represents a shorter period of time between two nano fossil horizons at 58.7 and 55.8Ma (Schiøler et al., 2010). These dates agree with ones in the East Coast Basin (Hollis et al., 2005). The base of the Tartan Formation in Pakaha-1 well in the Great South Basin is older than the other wells (Schiøler et al., 2010). There have been fewer comprehensive studies on the Tartan Formation in the Great South Basin than on the Waipawa Formation in the East Coast Basin, as the only samples of the Tartan Formation come from five hydrocarbon exploration wells, Pakaha-1, Kawau-1A, Hoiho-1C, Toroa-1 and Pukaki-1. Pukaki-1 had no side wall cores shot in the Tartan but cutting samples are available.

### Table 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SWC</th>
<th>depth feet (rkb)</th>
<th>depth mrkb</th>
<th>description (as in original well report)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15/4</td>
<td>7984</td>
<td>2433.5</td>
<td>Shale, light grey-tan, firm, blocky, slightly calcareous, trace mica, pyrite, glauconite. Few carbonaceous partings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16/4</td>
<td>7830</td>
<td>2386.6</td>
<td>Shale, light grey-tan as above, light increase in carbonaceous partings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17/4</td>
<td>7794</td>
<td>2375.6</td>
<td>Shale light grey-tan as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18/4</td>
<td>7550</td>
<td>2301.2</td>
<td>Shale, light-medium grey as above. Non calcareous, no carbonaceous partings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19/4</td>
<td>7424</td>
<td>2262.8</td>
<td>Shale, chocolate brown, firm, sub fissile-blocky, non calcareous, carbonaceous, micaceous, rare trace glauconite. Slight gas odour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20/4</td>
<td>7350</td>
<td>2240.3</td>
<td>Shale, chocolate brown as above, some laminations of dark grey-brown very micaceous shale. Slight gas odour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21/4</td>
<td>7276</td>
<td>2217.7</td>
<td>Shale, very light grey, firm, soft, semi-waxy, think laminations, sub fissile. Rare carbonaceous inclusion. Trace pyrite. Non calcareous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22/4</td>
<td>7220</td>
<td>2200.7</td>
<td>Shale, very light grey, as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23/4</td>
<td>7195</td>
<td>2193.0</td>
<td>Shale light grey-tan as above, becoming predominantly soft. Very thin laminations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24/4</td>
<td>7176</td>
<td>2187.2</td>
<td>Sub fissile, very slight trace carbonaceous inclusions. Trace mica, pyrite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25/4</td>
<td>7153</td>
<td>2180.2</td>
<td>Shale very light grey, very soft, thin laminations as above, black carbonaceous partings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26/4</td>
<td>6912</td>
<td>2106.8</td>
<td>Shale, very light grey, firm to soft as above. Black carbonaceous partings, micaceous, pyritic.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Samples in grey were analysed here, with the darker grey being the Tartan Formation.

3.0 Background to trace metal enrichment in sedimentary rocks

Appendix B  
BV
Trace metal enrichments have been studied in anoxic sediments for over 50 years (e.g. Goldschmit, 1954). Many different reasons for variations in trace metal concentration have been noticed over the years, but there are four major processes which enrich or deplete trace metals. These are enrichment from organic mater, diagenetic processes, redox sensitivity in the water column and upper sediments, and inclusion into precipitating minerals.

Most trace metals are enriched by several different processes, but by studying a suite of different trace metals it is possible to separate some of the processes and make inferences about the depositional environment. The following section provides a summary of why trace metals vary in anoxic sediments. Some trace metals have undergone much study (e.g. Cd, and Mo) while others (e.g, W) have not been measured before in any anoxic sediments.

The sediments in silicate rocks are generally dominated by terrestrial input with relatively minor input from biological tests. This detrital clastic debris is thus usually silicate and aluminium-rich. An assumption is generally made that Al is derived completely from detrital aluminosilicate sources. Although this assumption may not always be accurate, Al makes up a large weight percentage of the sediments, and thus any added by another method is generally insignificant. Plotting aluminium against other elements which are also purely detrital should give a straight line through the origin (e.g. Dean et al., 1997). This of course relies on the assumption that the sediment source and sorting remain constant, as any change in these change the background detrital minerals and thus affects the background element composition.

Variations in trace element composition due to shifts in the redox equilibrium of the sea water are seen mainly in anoxic settings. There are two different anoxic settings which can produce different trace metal signatures (e.g. Brumsack, 2006). Theses are an open system which has a continuous supply of water which gets oxygen depleted but moves through the system (e.g. the Peruvian upwelling, Böning et al., 2004), and an anoxic basin where evaporation is the main process which removes the water (e.g. the Black Sea, Brumsack, 1989). Figure 1 shows both the classic anoxic basin and the open ocean upwelling.

In an anoxic basin environment (Figure 2), most trace elements entering into the

Appendix B

BVI
system must be included into the sediments in one way or another. Water enters the system and is usually evaporated. In some anoxic basins there is an outflow, which may cause some depletion of those elements (e.g. Mn) which are more stable in oxic conditions and are reduced out of the sediments in anoxic conditions. When evaporation is the only way for water to leave the system (e.g. in the Dead Sea; Herut et al., 1997), even elements such as Mn are not depleted in the sediments. The enrichment factors (how much the trace metals are enriched) are dependent in anoxic basins on the rate of deposition, the rate of evaporation, and the concentration of elements in the water (Brumsack, 2006).

Anoxic basins often have high H₂S in the water as well as in the sediments, and this can cause a more intense precipitation of sulphates (e.g. Brumsack, 2006). The precipitation of sulphates is a very effective removal mechanism for many trace metals.
Upwellings (Figure 1) have the potential to cause anoxia by introducing oxygen-poor nutrient-rich water from the deep ocean into the photosynthetic zone, enhancing biological productivity which consumes the oxygen (Demaison and Moore, 1980). The result is an oxygen minimum layer, above which oxygen again becomes available through interaction between the water and the atmosphere. The still, nutrient-rich water boosts productivity. High productivity can also influence trace metal deposition and is generally referred to as biocycling (Brumsack, 2006).

Two major types of upwellings which cause different trace metal enrichments, were identified by Brumsack (2006), and are depicted in Figure 3. They are basic upwelling (Figure 3A) and upwelling over an extended shelf (Figure 3B). The extended shelf environment often allows more intense enrichment as H$_2$S can survive at the sediment water interface and thus allows the precipitation of sulphates. Aside from H$_2$S there are very few differences between the enrichment processes active on an extended shelf compared to a narrow shelf.

While anoxic basins generally cause enrichments in a wider range of elements than in
upwelling conditions, some elements can be considerably more enriched in upwellings than in anoxic basins. Anoxic basins are limited by the amount of trace metals carried into the system by water and sediments, with little or no water cycling through the system; in upwellings water gets cycled through the system providing a continuous supply of trace metals which can be reduced into the sediments (Brumsack 2006).

The overall enrichment and depletion processes that govern trace metal concentrations occur at different levels throughout the sediments. The depths that these occur at are generally dependent on porosity, sedimentation rate, and depth of the oxic/anoxic boundary (Böning et al., 2005).

In average marine oxic conditions oxygen is abundant in the top tens of cm of sediments, allowing aerobic life to flourish. Below the oxygen layer less efficient sulphate-reducing bacteria take over, and below this the even less efficient CO₂-reducing bacteria become dominant (Demaison and Moore, 1980). The tens of cm of sediments above the oxic/anoxic boundary limit water flow.

In anoxic conditions the sulphate-reducing bacteria are at or near the surface, precipitating out sulphates and phosphates. This process enriches many trace elements in the precipitates, especially while fresh nutrient-rich water cycles through. Restricting this flow (e.g. by putting more sediments between the oxic/anoxic boundary) limits the trace metal enrichments (e.g. Morse and Luther, 1999).

Anoxic conditions are also favourable for the preservation of organic matter in sediments (Demaison and Moore, 1980).

3.1 Processes governing trace metal variation in sedimentary rocks.

Silver (Ag) is generally enriched in all anoxic sediments (Brumsack, 2006); however, it is a poorly studied trace metal in organic rich sediments. Böning et al. (2004) suggested the main factor in enriching Ag off the coast of Peru was biocycling above the oxygen minimum layer caused by the local upwelling. McKay and Peterson (2002) suggesting the main control on Ag precipitation was the increase of Ag with depth in the water column. Böning et al. (2005) suggested the increase with depth may be related to the deposition of opaline silica, which also increases with depth, but that changes in
redox conditions can also influence the concentration of silver.

Morford et al. (2008) collected sediments from a transect off the west coast of North America purely to study the Ag enrichments in both the pore water and in solid state in the top 30cm of sediment. They noted a potential relationship with Ag, and discovered significantly enriched solid state Ag near the base of the upwelling, but concluded that the relationship was more complex and required more study.

Arsenic (As) is generally enriched in organic rich sediments (Brumsack, 2006). Off the coast of Peru, As was found to be enriched mainly through diffusion, and the limited enrichments was mainly due to sea water availability and not saturation of arsenic in the sediments (Böning et al., 2004). Huerta-Diaz and Morse (1992) found that very little As is in the poor fluids in anoxic conditions but that most of it is deposited with pyrite precipitation. Morse (1994) showed that the oxidation of sedimentary pyrite will release most of the As in a very short period of time. This type of oxidation occurs naturally during sediment resuspension or in seasonally anoxic regions. In outcrop As is considered relatively stable during the weathering of black shales as it has two solid states and with leaching tests showed less than 1% loss upon oxidation (Lavergren et al., 2009).

Gold (Au) is a very poorly studied trace metal in sediments in general. Koide et al. (1986) noted a considerable enrichment of Au in hydrothermal sulphides and suggested an involvement of sulphides in the precipitation. Mao et al. (2002) noted a factor of 100 enrichment over standard continental crust in a sulphide layer in Lower Cambrian marine black shales from south China.

Jean and Bancroft (1985) noticed solid Au forming on the surface of sulphides on individual irregularities, forming relatively quickly and efficiently. They suggested that sulphide can act as the reducing agent. Springer (1985) suggest that there may be a relationship between organic carbon and Au precipitation when carbon flakes were seen to be coated in Au in a sedimentary Archean black argillite. The mechanism which is responsible for this is unknown; it is uncertain whether the carbon flakes are of organic origin or not, but hydrocarbons in the rock indicate that an organic origin is likely.

Bismuth (Bi) is generally enriched in sediments beneath upwellings (Brumsack, 2006). Bi was mentioned as being more closely related to sulphur than organic carbon.
(Heinrich et al., 1980), but very little more work has been done on it and it is rarely studied in organic-rich sediments. Hindering the understanding of Bi in recent sediments is the enrichment caused by anthropogenic input from mining (Böning et al., 2004, 2009).

Cadmium (Cd) is enriched in several ways under anoxic conditions. The most important is the inclusion of Cd into sulphides (e.g. Heinrichs et al., 1980; Kreming, 1983). Heinrichs et al. (1980) showed that Cd was more closely related to sulphur than to organic matter in black shales. It also can accumulate in phosphates (Nathan et al., 1997) which explains some of the differences which are seen in Cd enrichments relative to other trace elements that are included in sulphates (Turgeon and Brumsack, 2006). Cadmium is also involved in biocycling, and is often associated with plankton growth (Calvert and Pedersen, 1993).

Cobalt (Co) is included into sulphides, and can thus be enriched in sulphur-rich anoxic conditions (Kreming, 1983). In sulphur-poor anoxic conditions Co behaves similarly to Mn, and in upwellings it is generally depleted (Böning et al., 2004).

Chromium (Cr) is enriched almost purely because of redox sensitivity. It exists in two main forms in the oxic ocean, as CrO$_4^{2-}$ and to a lesser extent Cr(OH)$_2^+$ (H$_2$O)$_4$. However under reducing conditions, it generally forms Cr (H$_2$O)$_4$(OH)$_2^+$ (Elderfield, 1970), and is quickly moved into the sediments (Calvert and Pederson, 1993). For Cr to be effectively scavenged into sediments, the pore waters must be completely anoxic (Morse and Luther, 1999).

Copper (Cu) is a micronutrient (e.g. Calvert and Pederson, 1993) and is thus generally enriched in many anoxic environments. Off the coast of Peru biocycling above the oxygen minimum zone is suggested to be the main reason for its enrichment (Böning et al., 2004). Cu can also included into sulphides (e.g. Morse, 1994). Another factor which can complicate its enrichment is an increase in the concentration of Cu in seawater with depth (Calvert and Pederson 1993).

Hafnium (Hf) and niobium (Nb) have rarely been measured in sedimentary rocks and no enrichments have been noticed. Hf and Nb are usually immobile, and are not affected by diagenetic, redox or weathering processes (e.g. Ross and Bustin, 2009).
Manganese (Mn) in modern sediments is generally depleted in oxygen minimum zones (e.g. Böning et al., 2004; Brumsack, 2006; Huerta-Diaz and Morse, 1992). Mn gets dissolved from the sediments and transported along the oxygen minima layer to a more oxygen rich waters. The processes involved in Mn enrichment or depletion are complex. Enrichment of Mn in sediments usually correlates positively with Fe and Co (Roy, 1992).

Mn$^{2+}$ is the reduced form of manganese and is generally soluble in sea water, but easily oxidised to Mn$^{4+}$ (Huerta-Diaz and Morse, 1992), which is more stable as a solid state and often forms manganese nodules. MnO$_2$ is the most common form of solid Mn in nature, but this is not stable in reducing conditions. Thus, generally in upwelling environments a Mn depletion is observed, but bacteria utilising solid state sulphate can oxidise Mn. With the lack of oxygen in reducing conditions, Mn$^{4+}$ formed by bacteria is precipitated into calcites or sulphates with only ~20% remaining in the water (Aller and Rude, 1987).

Molybdenum (Mo) is a highly studied trace metal in anoxic sediments. It is found to be strongly enriched, and usually included in sulphides (e.g. Elbaz-Poulichet et al., 2005). Mo is enriched in both upwellings (e.g. Böning et al., 2004), and in anoxic basins (Elbaz-Poulichet et al., 2005).

MoO$_4^{2-}$ is diffused into the sediments forming MoS$_4^{2-}$ (Erickson and Helz, 2000) and then later forms Mo-Fe-S cuboidal clusters on pyrite, from which it is reduced to Mo(VI) to stabilise the structure (Vorlicek et al., 2004). Crusius et al. (1996) found that enrichment of Mo begins at ~1cm below the sediment water interface in anoxic environments, and at >10cm in sub-oxic to oxic environments.

Nickel (Ni) is considered a micronutrient in the oceans and is important to plankton growth. In anoxic conditions it is also incorporated into sulphides, but requires a solid surface to precipitate on (Calvert and Pederson, 1993). Ni can also be correlated to oxyhydroxides in the water column, which are dissolved in the pore waters (Calvert and Pederson, 1993).

Lead (Pb) is generally related to sulphur in anoxic sediments (Heinrich et al., 1980) and has a short residence time in the ocean (Schaule and Patterson, 1981). The residence time is likely to be due to lead being rapidly scavenged by biogenic particles.

Appendix B

BXII
Rubidium (Rb) is relatively poorly studied in anoxic sediments, but was shown to be related to K (Plank and Langmuir, 1998), and is also generally behaves like Zr, Hf, and Nb. Although Rb is often measured, mechanisms of enrichment are uncertain and more study is required.

Rhenium (Re) is enriched in anoxic sediments, begins at 1 cm below the sediment water interface in sub-oxic and anoxic environments, and at >10 cm in oxic environments (Crusius et al., 1996). Böning et al. (2004) suggested that the enrichment of Re is mainly a factor of sea water availability. A highly useful aspect of Re enrichment is that it starts in suboxic environments. Thus Re can be used with Mo (which requires completely anoxic conditions to be enriched) to distinguish environments which are sub-oxic at the surface from those that are anoxic (Crusius et al., 1996). The use of the [Re\text{TOT}]/[Mo\text{TOT}] ratio is limited as pyrite concretions (polyframboids) form in sub-oxic environments and enrichments of Mo within these have also been noticed (Tribovillard et al., 2008). Before this ratio is used to form any major conclusions on trace elements, the type of pyrite in the sediments needs to be assessed to gauge which processes caused the Mo enrichment.

Antimony (Sb) is a poorly understood trace element in respect its behaviour in anoxic conditions (e.g. Filella et al., 2002). Takayanagi and Cossa (1997) suggested that Sb may be included into manganese and iron oxide particles or sulphides. Sb is generally enriched in anoxic environments (e.g. Böning et al., 2004), but the exact process causing the enrichment is unknown.

Selenium (Se) is often enriched in upwellings, yet the reason for enrichment is not clear. Se is involved in biocycling (Cutter, 1989) but is also enriched at the bottom of the ocean in the form of Se\textsuperscript{6+}, and thus upwelling intensity may be important (Crusius and Thompson, 2003). Solid Se is normally related to Ag; in sub-oxic conditions
biological influences can produce AgSe or Ag$_2$Se (Crusius and Thompson, 2003).

Tin (Sn) is a very poorly studied metal in anoxia and has been omitted from most trace element studies on sediments.

Strontium (Sr) is often dependent on carbonate as it is significantly enriched through biological precipitation of carbonate tests, which is a temperature dependent process (Plank and Langmair, 1998). Redox relationships have not been addressed for the effect of marine anoxia on strontium.

Tantalum (Ta) is generally unaffected by redox conditions and is generally paired with Nb as they are difficult to separate (Ross and Bustin, 2009). Ta is also very rarely included into marine trace element studies.

Thorium (Th) is mainly detrital in sediments but may be enriched in the hydrogenous Fe-Mn component of sediments (Plank and Langmair, 1998). Generally Th is not very strongly enriched and is often related to Hf, Nb, Zr, and Ta.

Titanium (Ti) is generally related to Al in anoxic sediments, but can be enriched in sediments by mechanical processes. Ti is often contained in heavy minerals such as rutile, and thus increases in Ti often indicate increase in energy (Dellwig et al., 2000). Ti is also involved in biocycling, and its exact removal pathway is poorly understood (Brumsack, 2006).

Thallium (Tl) is a relatively poorly studied trace element which is not included in many of the older studies. Heinrich et al. (1980) showed that Tl was more closely related to sulphur than to organic carbon. Thallium may also be involved in biocycling as suggested by Böning et al. (2004) with respect to the Peruvian upwelling, but more work is required to confirm this.

Uranium (U) is enriched in anoxic sediments in several ways. U enrichments in black shales were noticed very early (e.g. McKelvey and Nelson, 1950), and thus U is one of the better studied elements in anoxic conditions. U has been noted to diffuse directly into the sediments (e.g. Shaw et al., 1990), and to precipitate uranium salts (Disnar and Sureau, 1990). Phosphates contain the best link to U enrichments in most marine sediments, with phosphate-rich black shales considered generally the most enriched (e.g. McKelvey and Nelson, 1950). In anoxic conditions the limiting factor on U
enrichment is generally its availability in sea water.

Vanadium (V) is always enriched in anoxic marine settings. Vanadium has three soluble oxidation states which occur naturally, $\text{HVO}_4^{2-}$, $\text{H}_2\text{VO}_4^-$, and $\text{VO(OH)}_3^-$ (e.g. Turner et al., 1981). However, when reduced V is precipitated as $\text{V}_2\text{O}_3$ or $\text{V(OH)}_3^-$ (Wanty and Goldhaber, 1992). V has a strong relationship with organic matter yet its concentration is chiefly governed by redox sensitivity (e.g. Shaw et al., 1990). A main limiting factor is often sea water availability, as has been suggested for the Peruvian upwelling (Böning et al., 2004).

Tungsten (W) has not been studied with respect to its abundance in anoxic sediments.

Yttrium (Y) is occasionally measured in trace metal studies on anoxic sediments (e.g. Ross and Bustin, 2009), yet an explanation for variations of Y in anoxic sediments is still required.

Zirconium (Zr) has been measured in only a few studies and enrichments have not generally been noted. Ross and Bustin (2009) have suggested that Zirconium is not normally enriched due to anoxic conditions, but that it should have a direct relationship with Hf and with other elements which are insoluble in both oxic and anoxic environments.

4.0 Methods

This study examined eight side wall core samples from the Kawau-1A well (table 1). The samples were digested in the clean laboratory facilities at Victoria University of Wellington, then trace metals were measured using inductively coupled plasma mass spectrometry (ICP-MS).

50mg of each of the side wall core samples were taken, weighed and digested in hydrofluoric (HF) and nitric (HNO$_3$) acids. The USGS BHVO-1 and BHVO-2 standards where also digested, and a blank was also run to check for contamination. BHVO-1 was used to calculate whole rock values, and BHVO-2 to calculate errors.

A minor issue was encountered with the digestion process as the organic matter was very sticky and would often adhere to the lids of the digestion containers. Traces of the
samples may have been lost in the digestion process and as this is not measurable this provides a potential error for the absolute concentrations of trace metals. However, as this affects all elements in a sample simultaneously, it is not a problem for the enrichment factors (EF) calculated later. The following 32 elements were measured using ICP-MS in an attempt to understand the depositional environment of the Tartan Formation: Ag, As, Au, Bi, Ca, Cd, Co, Cr, Cu, Hf, Hg, Mn, Mo, Nb, Ni, Pb, Rb, Re, Sb, Se, Sn, Sr, Ta, Th, Ti, Tl, U, V, W, Y, Zn and Zr.

5.0 Results

29 of the 32 measured elements gave potentially meaningful results, Zn and Ca encountered major interferences in the cleaning liquids, and Hg was not distinguishable from the background. All three of these elements thus occasionally gave negative concentrations and hence were excluded from the results.

Table 2 shows the absolute errors for the trace metal measurements in percent. Most seem realistic, but many of the errors are too large due to poor constraints on the USGS BHVO-2 concentrations (taken from USGS website). The numbers below Au on the list are larger than what the graphs (Figure 4, 5, 6, and 7) indicate. The graphs of elements plotted against one another (Figure 5,6) do not support such large errors especially with $r^2$ values of up to 0.994 (Figure 5) for a direct linear relationship. The red values indicate elements where problems were encountered or which had undetectable amounts of that element as explained in the above paragraph.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Error ±%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cr</td>
<td>3.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>4.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ni</td>
<td>4.48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Co</td>
<td>4.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ti</td>
<td>5.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As</td>
<td>5.79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>6.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>6.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sr</td>
<td>6.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mn</td>
<td>7.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zr90</td>
<td>7.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zr91</td>
<td>7.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nb</td>
<td>7.87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rb</td>
<td>8.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Th</td>
<td>8.78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ca</td>
<td>9.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hf</td>
<td>9.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cd</td>
<td>9.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>10.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cu</td>
<td>10.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ag</td>
<td>10.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Se</td>
<td>10.64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>21.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sn</td>
<td>28.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pb</td>
<td>34.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bi</td>
<td>43.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sb</td>
<td>43.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ti</td>
<td>50.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hg</td>
<td>123.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zn</td>
<td>178.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Re</td>
<td>178.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mo</td>
<td>270.27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Re was in very low concentrations in the BHVO-1 and BHVO-2 standards; thus the errors show up as far larger than is realistic. In addition for many of the elements (e.g. Mo) the concentration was assumed to be the same in BHVO-1 and BHVO-2 as the concentration has not been measured and published on the USGS website for BHVO-2.

A table showing the trace metal variations measured in the Kawau-1A samples is included as Appendix 1. Figure 4 shows the different trace metal variations in the eight samples measured.

As Al was not measured, normalising to elements was difficult. This study attempted to get around this by finding another element which should have a similar relationship as aluminium. Al is normally used as it is thought to be unaffected by enrichment processes because it makes up a structural component of the silicate grains. Many authors have commented that Ti has a direct relationship to Al (e.g. Böning et al., 2004).

Several elements which should be stable in relation to one another and to Ti are Zr, 

**Table 2** calculated errors for trace metal variations in the Tartan Formation as calculated

**Figure 4** Depth profiles of trace metal variations in Kawau-1. The TOC measurements are from Meadows (2008). All data are plotted against depth (meters below rotary kelly bushing). Depths are taken from Hunt (1977).

Most of the data is presented in ppm (parts per million) apart from Mn, Ti, and TOC which are in weight percent.

The grey band represents the Tartan Formation.
Figure 5) The relationship of Zr to Hf, Ti, Ta, and Nb is approximately linear. Error bars have not been plotted on these graphs. The $r^2$ values are as follow Hf/Zr 0.9943, Ti/Zr 0.9904, Ta/Zr 0.8891, and Nb/Zr 0.8878.

Nb, Hf, and Ta (as long as the source of sediments does not change). Figure 5 shows plots of these elements against Zr. Zr has a very strong relationship to both Ti and Hf, and a slightly weaker relationship to Ta and Nb.

Whether Zr, Nb, Ta or Hf are viable alternatives to measuring Al in sediments still needs to be confirmed in a separate study which measures both. A relationship in the Tartan Formation between these elements to the detrital contributions of sediments may prove to be more complicated. The spike in Zr, Hf, Nb and Ta (Figure 4) within the Tartan Formation is large and indicative of a change in sediment type, not an increase in the concentration of detrital sediments as can occur when there is a decrease in carbonate or TOC. High TOC values make up a considerable portion of the Tartan Formation; thus if sediment source and sorting remains constant, a decrease in elements...
such as Zr, Hf, Nb, and Ta should be expected.

The relationship between Zr, Hf, Ti, Ta, and Nb is linear (Figure 5), and thus they can be assumed to be related to the detrital material in some way. Plotting these against the other elements will provide interesting information that at the very least should show which of them vary with these other elements and which vary independently or due to other processes.

Figure 6 shows several other sets of elements which appear to follow close to a linear tread when plotted against Zr. The two red points on each graph are the Tartan Formation, with the rest of the points being from adjacent units. Using the background work discussed in section 3.1 V, Y, and Tl should in theory be enriched in anoxic conditions, and plot above the line in Figure 6, while if in the open ocean Mn should be depleted and plots below the line. While these elements do follow this trend, the enrichment is not as great as is seen in other anoxic sediments (e.g. Brumsack, 2006). The line is an average through all the samples, and includes the Tartan Formation samples; if these are excluded, the difference becomes more obvious.

As these results indicate anoxic conditions when plotted against Zr, an enrichment factor (EF) for these samples can be calculated using a variation of the enrichment factor.
factor formula generally used for trace metal enrichments. Enrichment factor is used as it is the only way to attempt to remove the background variation introduced from variations from the detrital sediment source.

The general formula for calculating an enrichment factor (EF) is: \[ EF = \frac{(\text{element}/\text{Al})_{\text{sample}}}{(\text{element}/\text{Al})_{\text{average shale}}} \] (e.g. Brumsack, 2006). Although average shale is generally used as the background, when looking at ancient deposits it is often more useful to look at the variations relative to the local background as average shale composition is likely to vary with time. Concentrations of trace metals in sea water are not constant through time and thus a local background from the overlying and underlying units may give more meaningful results (e.g. Brumsack, 2006). Further, when plotting against local shales, the processes driving the local variations in trace metals may become more noticeable.

The formula used here is: \[ EF = \frac{(\text{element}/(\text{Zr}, \text{Hf}, \text{or} \text{ Ti}))_{\text{Tartan 20/4}}}{(\text{element}/(\text{Zr}, \text{Hf} \text{ or} \text{ Ti}))_{\text{Adjacent units}}} \] The background values are averaged, and a separate EF will be produced for each of the Tartan Formation samples. This formula will give identical results as the original when the aluminium concentration is directly related to Zr, Hf or Ti. If Al is not related then this formula will give a different EF.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>background</th>
<th>Tartan 20/4</th>
<th>Tartan 19/4</th>
<th>Ti</th>
<th>Tartan 20/4</th>
<th>Tartan 19/4</th>
<th>Zr</th>
<th>Tartan 20/4</th>
<th>Tartan 19/4</th>
<th>Hf</th>
<th>Tartan 20/4</th>
<th>Tartan 19/4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ti</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>0.57</td>
<td>0.52</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1.05</td>
<td>1.03</td>
<td>1.13</td>
<td>1.06</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zr</td>
<td>29.89</td>
<td>63.91</td>
<td>60.11</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>0.97</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1.08</td>
<td>1.03</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hf</td>
<td>0.904</td>
<td>1.797</td>
<td>1.761</td>
<td>0.89</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>0.97</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au</td>
<td>0.0004</td>
<td>0.0012</td>
<td>0.0012</td>
<td>1.44</td>
<td>1.59</td>
<td>1.51</td>
<td>1.64</td>
<td>1.62</td>
<td>1.69</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Re</td>
<td>0.0002</td>
<td>0.0033</td>
<td>0.0028</td>
<td>1.39</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>1.46</td>
<td>1.64</td>
<td>1.57</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ag</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>1.05</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>1.08</td>
<td>1.02</td>
<td>1.11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cd</td>
<td>0.301</td>
<td>0.543</td>
<td>0.486</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.78</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.91</td>
<td>0.83</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Se</td>
<td>0.23</td>
<td>0.73</td>
<td>0.66</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>1.52</td>
<td>1.44</td>
<td>1.63</td>
<td>1.49</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bi</td>
<td>0.303</td>
<td>0.496</td>
<td>0.467</td>
<td>0.73</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>0.82</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tl</td>
<td>0.31</td>
<td>0.64</td>
<td>0.65</td>
<td>0.91</td>
<td>1.01</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td>1.04</td>
<td>1.03</td>
<td>1.07</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sb</td>
<td>0.62</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>0.61</td>
<td>0.57</td>
<td>0.47</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.49</td>
<td>0.64</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>0.44</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>1.01</td>
<td>1.04</td>
<td>1.06</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>1.13</td>
<td>0.89</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>0.902</td>
<td>1.360</td>
<td>1.371</td>
<td>0.67</td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>0.71</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>0.78</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sn</td>
<td>2.13</td>
<td>3.13</td>
<td>2.86</td>
<td>0.66</td>
<td>0.65</td>
<td>0.69</td>
<td>0.67</td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>0.69</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As</td>
<td>2.17</td>
<td>7.49</td>
<td>6.14</td>
<td>1.54</td>
<td>1.37</td>
<td>1.61</td>
<td>1.41</td>
<td>1.73</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>3.19</td>
<td>8.47</td>
<td>9.36</td>
<td>1.18</td>
<td>1.42</td>
<td>1.24</td>
<td>1.46</td>
<td>1.34</td>
<td>1.51</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Se</td>
<td>3.01</td>
<td>4.38</td>
<td>4.34</td>
<td>1.01</td>
<td>1.04</td>
<td>1.06</td>
<td>1.07</td>
<td>1.14</td>
<td>1.11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Th</td>
<td>4.75</td>
<td>8.51</td>
<td>9.54</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.97</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>1.03</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nb</td>
<td>4.94</td>
<td>9.16</td>
<td>8.74</td>
<td>0.83</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>0.91</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fe</td>
<td>6.83</td>
<td>17.54</td>
<td>18.07</td>
<td>1.14</td>
<td>1.28</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>1.32</td>
<td>1.29</td>
<td>1.36</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mo</td>
<td>8.08</td>
<td>24.99</td>
<td>38.18</td>
<td>1.38</td>
<td>2.29</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>2.35</td>
<td>1.56</td>
<td>2.42</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cu</td>
<td>10.92</td>
<td>61.78</td>
<td>20.14</td>
<td>2.52</td>
<td>0.89</td>
<td>2.65</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>2.85</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pb</td>
<td>31.63</td>
<td>38.84</td>
<td>17.11</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>0.26</td>
<td>0.57</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>0.62</td>
<td>0.28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sr</td>
<td>21.59</td>
<td>69.22</td>
<td>63.82</td>
<td>1.43</td>
<td>1.43</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>1.47</td>
<td>1.61</td>
<td>1.52</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>40.85</td>
<td>101.87</td>
<td>88.2</td>
<td>1.32</td>
<td>1.03</td>
<td>1.17</td>
<td>1.05</td>
<td>1.26</td>
<td>1.09</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nb</td>
<td>41.6</td>
<td>78.13</td>
<td>74.34</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>0.89</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cr</td>
<td>58.21</td>
<td>200.31</td>
<td>150.24</td>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.61</td>
<td>1.28</td>
<td>1.73</td>
<td>1.32</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sr</td>
<td>126.39</td>
<td>186.51</td>
<td>226.47</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>0.69</td>
<td>0.89</td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mn</td>
<td>0.0065</td>
<td>0.0111</td>
<td>0.0109</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>0.81</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.83</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 3** Estimates of enrichment factors in the Tartan Formation relative to the average background using the formula discussed in text.
Table 3 shows the calculated enrichment factors using the different background elements. The enrichment factors for many of the elements are less than 1, which is not normal for anoxic conditions (Brumsack 2006). Average enrichment factors are plotted in Figure 7.

The depth profiles (Figure 4) are a useful comparison when explaining these enrichment factors. Three of the four most depleted elements according to the enrichment factors (Sr, Pb, and Sb) show no distinctive signal throughout the depth profiles. Although from the absolute concentrations it appears as though 26 out of the 29 elements are enriched. Much of this enrichment is background from the detrital material, and only about half the trace metals are enriched (Figure 7).

![Figure 7](image_url) Average enrichment factor for each of the Tartan Formation samples. The enrichment factors are calculated using the formula provided in the text.

### 6.0 Discussion

Trace elements from sediments are generally normalised to Al to take into account the input of the detrital sediments. In this study this was not possible as Al was not measured, and Ti, Zr, and Hf were used instead. This technique has not been used before, but Ti has been shown by many authors (e.g. Brumsack, 2006) to be positively correlated to Al. Hf and Zr correlated extremely well to one another, with an $r^2$ of 0.994 when plotted against a straight line through the origin. Ti/Zr correlated similarly with an $r^2$ of 0.990. Zr is very hard to differentiate from Hf, and processes which do differentiate them do not generally occur in nature. Neither are soluble in water, and thus changes in
Redox equilibriums will have little effect their abundance (Ross and Bustin, 2009).

These elements are not generally used in this way as they are rarely measured in sediments, yet the use of several different elements allows an extra control on the calculated enrichment factor.

The increase in Ti, Hf, and Zr is likely due to a change in sediment source. Schiøler et al. (2010) found that most of the organic contents of the Tartan Formation was derived from terrestrial material likely relating to a maximum regression, and also suggested a potential increase in terrestrial derived clays may be responsible for the gamma ray spike in the well logs. This study suggests a drastic increase in Ti, Hf, and Zr, which may be related to sedimentation suggested by Schiøler et al., (2010), and an increase in terrestrial clays may provide the increase noticed in background variation.

An increase in detrital sediments alone can be ruled out as all the Late Paleocene sediments in the Great South Basin are almost purely detrital, with very little calcite (Cook et al., 1999). Thus a change in sediment source or, possibly, a change in sorting is required to produce a significant enrichment in Zr, Hf and Ti.

Trace metal variations suggest an anoxic environment of deposition with depletion. A near-anoxic environment has been suggested for the units above and below the Tartan Formation (Schiøler et al., 2010), thus the small changes in EF (Figure 7) may be related to both a shift in the location of the anoxic/oxic boundary, and potentially a dramatic increase in sedimentation rate, somewhat reducing the effect of trace element variations as the sediments are buried too quickly to have much water cycle through them.

Some of the elements measured (Pb, Sr, and Sb) showed no noticeable trace metal enrichment or depletion within the Tartan Formation, and are probably controlled by a different process.

Conclusion

Trace metal variations may confirm the environment of deposition proposed by Schiøler et al. (2010), where it has been suggested that an influx of terrestrial organic
matter helped enhance the anoxic conditions. The trace metal variations also may point to an increased depositional rate.

Zr, Hf and Ti are closely related in the sediments of the Tartan Formation. Ti has previously been shown to be directly related to Al, thus this study showed that enrichment factors could be calculated for these three elements. The enrichment factors are likely to be similar to those shown by Al. Using more elements has the added advantage that any variation in one of the reference elements will be noticed when plotted against the others.

**Future work**

The analysis of numerous elements simultaneously to calculate trace metal enrichment factors is an exciting prospect and requires more study. A comparison of these elements to Al needs to be made to see how these enrichment factors would compare to the standard Al-based enrichment factor. This technique would have the advantage that a change in sediment source may more often become detectable through variations of Al plotted against Zr and Hf, especially if sediment sources have similar background Al but different composition of other trace elements.

Other wells which encounter the Tartan Formation should be analysed using the same technique as for Kawau-1A to see if the stratigraphic variations are similar and whether other sites show the same enrichments. The probably synchronous Waipawa Formation should also be studied, as trace metals may indicate whether it was deposited under the same conditions.

Many of the variations noticed in this preliminary study are not explained by current knowledge of trace metal variations, and more research is required to understand them. Importantly, significant depletions in W relative to the normalised values were noticed but no removal mechanism has yet been suggested for this element.
References


Appendix B


Morse J.W. 1994. Interactions of trace metals with authigenic sulfide minerals: implications for their bioavailability. Marine Chemistry 46 1-6


Appendix B

BXXV

Appendix B
## Results

XRF results prior to normalisation for Angora Quarry

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fe_{2}O_{3}</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>2.58</td>
<td>2.26</td>
<td>2.41</td>
<td>1.87</td>
<td>2.36</td>
<td>3.59</td>
<td>3.51</td>
<td>2.47</td>
<td>3.58</td>
<td>3.02</td>
<td>3.32</td>
<td>2.77</td>
<td>3.56</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>2.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MnO</td>
<td>0.1*</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TiO_{2}</td>
<td>0.78</td>
<td>0.38</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>0.31</td>
<td>0.46</td>
<td>0.47</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>0.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CaO</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>4.91</td>
<td>5.75</td>
<td>3.07</td>
<td>6.78</td>
<td>5.63</td>
<td>1.42</td>
<td>2.43</td>
<td>58.9</td>
<td>72.70</td>
<td>72.86</td>
<td>76.56</td>
<td>71.81</td>
<td>70.89</td>
<td>75.72</td>
<td>71.79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K_{2}O</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>1.26</td>
<td>1.16</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.12</td>
<td>1.34</td>
<td>1.49</td>
<td>1.51</td>
<td>1.44</td>
<td>1.72</td>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>1.73</td>
<td>1.65</td>
<td>1.73</td>
<td>1.40</td>
<td>1.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SO_{3}</td>
<td>0.6*</td>
<td>0.46</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>0.65</td>
<td>0.46</td>
<td>&lt;0.01</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>&lt;0.01</td>
<td>&lt;0.01</td>
<td>&lt;0.01</td>
<td>&lt;0.01</td>
<td>&lt;0.01</td>
<td>&lt;0.01</td>
<td>&lt;0.01</td>
<td>0.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P_{2}O_{5}</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.28</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>0.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SiO_{2}</td>
<td>58.9</td>
<td>72.70</td>
<td>72.86</td>
<td>76.56</td>
<td>71.81</td>
<td>70.89</td>
<td>75.72</td>
<td>71.79</td>
<td>80.35</td>
<td>70.78</td>
<td>74.57</td>
<td>69.87</td>
<td>71.73</td>
<td>67.85</td>
<td>73.52</td>
<td>73.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al_{2}O_{3}</td>
<td>16.7</td>
<td>8.30</td>
<td>7.65</td>
<td>8.27</td>
<td>7.51</td>
<td>9.02</td>
<td>10.19</td>
<td>10.33</td>
<td>1.18</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>0.89</td>
<td>0.89</td>
<td>0.83</td>
<td>0.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MgO</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>0.78</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>0.90</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>0.83</td>
<td>0.82</td>
<td>0.80</td>
<td>0.80</td>
<td>0.80</td>
<td>0.80</td>
<td>0.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Na_{2}O</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>0.82</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>0.80</td>
<td>0.61</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>0.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOI</td>
<td>7.65</td>
<td>7.47</td>
<td>5.99</td>
<td>8.25</td>
<td>8.06</td>
<td>5.15</td>
<td>7.83</td>
<td></td>
<td>4.45</td>
<td>8.43</td>
<td>6.89</td>
<td>9.96</td>
<td>9.64</td>
<td>11.22</td>
<td>10.45</td>
<td>7.51</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
XRF results after normalisation to 100% for Angora Quarry

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fe₂O₃</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>2.582</td>
<td>2.267</td>
<td>2.414</td>
<td>1.875</td>
<td>2.363</td>
<td>3.590</td>
<td>3.516</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MnO</td>
<td>0.1*</td>
<td>0.018</td>
<td>0.018</td>
<td>0.019</td>
<td>0.018</td>
<td>0.018</td>
<td>0.009</td>
<td>0.028</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TiO₂</td>
<td>0.78</td>
<td>0.378</td>
<td>0.332</td>
<td>0.366</td>
<td>0.329</td>
<td>0.414</td>
<td>0.464</td>
<td>0.469</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CaO</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>4.915</td>
<td>5.751</td>
<td>3.080</td>
<td>6.797</td>
<td>5.627</td>
<td>1.421</td>
<td>2.430</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K₂O</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>1.256</td>
<td>1.164</td>
<td>1.257</td>
<td>1.126</td>
<td>1.336</td>
<td>1.494</td>
<td>1.515</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SO₃</td>
<td>0.6*</td>
<td>0.461</td>
<td>0.719</td>
<td>0.094</td>
<td>0.650</td>
<td>0.460</td>
<td>&lt;0.01</td>
<td>0.156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P₂O₅</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.083</td>
<td>0.074</td>
<td>0.075</td>
<td>0.064</td>
<td>0.074</td>
<td>0.095</td>
<td>0.083</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SiO₂</td>
<td>58.9</td>
<td>72.74</td>
<td>72.94</td>
<td>76.71</td>
<td>71.96</td>
<td>70.89</td>
<td>75.76</td>
<td>71.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al₂O₃</td>
<td>16.7</td>
<td>8.308</td>
<td>7.659</td>
<td>8.283</td>
<td>7.529</td>
<td>9.020</td>
<td>10.20</td>
<td>10.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MgO</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>0.784</td>
<td>0.839</td>
<td>0.902</td>
<td>0.768</td>
<td>0.883</td>
<td>0.881</td>
<td>0.920</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Na₂O</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>0.822</td>
<td>0.757</td>
<td>0.799</td>
<td>0.616</td>
<td>0.853</td>
<td>0.931</td>
<td>0.880</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUM</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fe₂O₃</td>
<td>2.470</td>
<td>3.587</td>
<td>3.027</td>
<td>3.327</td>
<td>2.771</td>
<td>3.562</td>
<td>2.345</td>
<td>2.211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MnO</td>
<td>0.010</td>
<td>0.009</td>
<td>0.009</td>
<td>0.009</td>
<td>0.018</td>
<td>0.018</td>
<td>0.009</td>
<td>0.009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TiO₂</td>
<td>0.381</td>
<td>0.531</td>
<td>0.483</td>
<td>0.539</td>
<td>0.486</td>
<td>0.540</td>
<td>0.456</td>
<td>0.378</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CaO</td>
<td>0.143</td>
<td>0.137</td>
<td>0.121</td>
<td>0.126</td>
<td>0.108</td>
<td>0.257</td>
<td>0.089</td>
<td>4.782</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K₂O</td>
<td>1.446</td>
<td>1.725</td>
<td>1.529</td>
<td>1.731</td>
<td>1.649</td>
<td>1.730</td>
<td>1.399</td>
<td>1.270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SO₃</td>
<td>&lt;0.01</td>
<td>&lt;0.01</td>
<td>&lt;0.01</td>
<td>0.036</td>
<td>&lt;0.01</td>
<td>0.097</td>
<td>&lt;0.01</td>
<td>0.276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P₂O₅</td>
<td>0.067</td>
<td>0.110</td>
<td>0.093</td>
<td>0.045</td>
<td>0.099</td>
<td>0.097</td>
<td>0.054</td>
<td>0.065</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SiO₂</td>
<td>80.42</td>
<td>70.87</td>
<td>74.74</td>
<td>69.91</td>
<td>71.77</td>
<td>67.92</td>
<td>73.69</td>
<td>73.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al₂O₃</td>
<td>8.706</td>
<td>12.76</td>
<td>11.51</td>
<td>12.30</td>
<td>11.50</td>
<td>12.63</td>
<td>10.04</td>
<td>8.394</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MgO</td>
<td>0.725</td>
<td>0.833</td>
<td>0.826</td>
<td>0.800</td>
<td>0.801</td>
<td>0.886</td>
<td>0.591</td>
<td>0.811</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Na₂O</td>
<td>1.178</td>
<td>1.002</td>
<td>0.758</td>
<td>0.923</td>
<td>0.972</td>
<td>0.892</td>
<td>0.837</td>
<td>0.700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUM</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Appendix C

CII
ICP-MS results for Angora Quarry Part 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Li</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>35.7</td>
<td>32.6</td>
<td>31.6</td>
<td>34.6</td>
<td>33.8</td>
<td>37.5</td>
<td>38.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ca</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>4.86</td>
<td>5.71</td>
<td>3.01</td>
<td>6.64</td>
<td>5.71</td>
<td>1.42</td>
<td>2.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ti</td>
<td>0.78</td>
<td>0.378</td>
<td>0.331</td>
<td>0.366</td>
<td>0.329</td>
<td>0.414</td>
<td>0.464</td>
<td>0.469</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>53.3</td>
<td>49.0</td>
<td>53.5</td>
<td>51.0</td>
<td>64.0</td>
<td>68.0</td>
<td>65.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cr</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>47.7</td>
<td>43.3</td>
<td>47.3</td>
<td>39.3</td>
<td>51.5</td>
<td>57.9</td>
<td>72.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Co</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>14.4</td>
<td>31.6</td>
<td>14.3</td>
<td>12.4</td>
<td>19.4</td>
<td>22.4</td>
<td>34.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ni</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>19.7</td>
<td>20.4</td>
<td>20.3</td>
<td>20.9</td>
<td>32.1</td>
<td>15.4</td>
<td>27.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cu</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>9.37</td>
<td>10.2</td>
<td>9.49</td>
<td>10.3</td>
<td>12.7</td>
<td>14.6</td>
<td>15.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zn</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>56.7</td>
<td>54.8</td>
<td>83.0</td>
<td>53.9</td>
<td>60.9</td>
<td>68.6</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ga</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>33.3</td>
<td>34.4</td>
<td>35.4</td>
<td>35.0</td>
<td>41.9</td>
<td>35.9</td>
<td>35.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ge</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>0.378</td>
<td>0.349</td>
<td>0.370</td>
<td>0.287</td>
<td>0.381</td>
<td>0.561</td>
<td>0.549</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>1.18</td>
<td>1.63</td>
<td>1.30</td>
<td>1.55</td>
<td>4.32</td>
<td>2.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rb</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>60.2</td>
<td>57.0</td>
<td>60.6</td>
<td>58.6</td>
<td>66.8</td>
<td>72.3</td>
<td>72.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sr</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>138</td>
<td>151</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>171</td>
<td>166</td>
<td>78.5</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>10.4</td>
<td>10.8</td>
<td>8.26</td>
<td>8.740</td>
<td>12.3</td>
<td>12.9</td>
<td>11.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zr90</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>47.5</td>
<td>42.3</td>
<td>47.3</td>
<td>40.2</td>
<td>51.1</td>
<td>57.7</td>
<td>63.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zr91</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>45.7</td>
<td>40.7</td>
<td>45.8</td>
<td>38.9</td>
<td>49.7</td>
<td>55.5</td>
<td>61.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nb</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>5.00</td>
<td>4.45</td>
<td>5.33</td>
<td>4.84</td>
<td>5.77</td>
<td>6.03</td>
<td>6.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mo</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>1.63</td>
<td>3.76</td>
<td>3.94*</td>
<td>3.24*</td>
<td>4.17</td>
<td>6.57</td>
<td>2.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cd</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.0360</td>
<td>0.0445</td>
<td>0.0697</td>
<td>0.0664</td>
<td>0.0686</td>
<td>0.0353</td>
<td>0.0857</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sn</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>1.57</td>
<td>1.66</td>
<td>2.19</td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>1.92</td>
<td>1.61</td>
<td>2.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sb</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>4.90</td>
<td>5.10</td>
<td>5.25</td>
<td>5.96</td>
<td>6.98</td>
<td>7.72</td>
<td>6.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ba</td>
<td>580</td>
<td>507</td>
<td>553</td>
<td>563</td>
<td>582</td>
<td>687</td>
<td>529</td>
<td>536</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>La</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>13.4</td>
<td>10.2</td>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>15.3</td>
<td>13.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ce</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>26.3</td>
<td>26.9</td>
<td>21.8</td>
<td>20.2</td>
<td>29.2</td>
<td>30.1</td>
<td>27.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pr</td>
<td>9.7</td>
<td>3.12</td>
<td>3.10</td>
<td>2.66</td>
<td>2.43</td>
<td>3.55</td>
<td>3.95</td>
<td>3.48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nd</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>11.8</td>
<td>11.7</td>
<td>9.93</td>
<td>9.04</td>
<td>13.2</td>
<td>14.9</td>
<td>13.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sm</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>2.40</td>
<td>2.32</td>
<td>1.967</td>
<td>1.755</td>
<td>2.66</td>
<td>3.01</td>
<td>2.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eu151</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>0.589</td>
<td>0.573</td>
<td>0.487</td>
<td>0.453</td>
<td>0.652</td>
<td>0.707</td>
<td>0.623</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eu153</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>0.624</td>
<td>0.618</td>
<td>0.552</td>
<td>0.527</td>
<td>0.731</td>
<td>0.752</td>
<td>0.695</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gd</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>2.21</td>
<td>2.19</td>
<td>1.83</td>
<td>1.78</td>
<td>2.53</td>
<td>2.73</td>
<td>2.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tb</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>0.305</td>
<td>0.306</td>
<td>0.258</td>
<td>0.245</td>
<td>0.358</td>
<td>0.393</td>
<td>0.350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dy</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>1.81</td>
<td>1.79</td>
<td>1.49</td>
<td>1.46</td>
<td>2.13</td>
<td>2.25</td>
<td>2.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ho</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>0.357</td>
<td>0.363</td>
<td>0.292</td>
<td>0.292</td>
<td>0.417</td>
<td>0.437</td>
<td>0.410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Er</td>
<td>3.9</td>
<td>1.08</td>
<td>1.06</td>
<td>0.847</td>
<td>0.867</td>
<td>1.24</td>
<td>1.29</td>
<td>1.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tm</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.159</td>
<td>0.152</td>
<td>0.126</td>
<td>0.131</td>
<td>0.197</td>
<td>0.185</td>
<td>0.184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yb</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>1.05</td>
<td>0.995</td>
<td>0.878</td>
<td>0.868</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>1.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lu</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>0.148</td>
<td>0.146</td>
<td>0.128</td>
<td>0.130</td>
<td>0.176</td>
<td>0.179</td>
<td>0.178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hf</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>1.33</td>
<td>1.17</td>
<td>1.37</td>
<td>1.13</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>1.64</td>
<td>1.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ti</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>0.440</td>
<td>0.423</td>
<td>0.532</td>
<td>0.515</td>
<td>0.615</td>
<td>0.462</td>
<td>0.560</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pb</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>7.91</td>
<td>7.26</td>
<td>8.58</td>
<td>7.57</td>
<td>9.59</td>
<td>10.3</td>
<td>11.461</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Th</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>5.58</td>
<td>5.12</td>
<td>5.59</td>
<td>5.26</td>
<td>6.33</td>
<td>6.96</td>
<td>7.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>1.54</td>
<td>1.82</td>
<td>1.73</td>
<td>1.95</td>
<td>2.53</td>
<td>2.48</td>
<td>2.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## ICP-MS results for Angora Quarry Part 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stratigraphic height</td>
<td>41.9</td>
<td>48.3</td>
<td>54.7</td>
<td>61.1</td>
<td>67.5</td>
<td>73.1</td>
<td>95.0*</td>
<td>80.0*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Li</td>
<td>32.6</td>
<td>61.5</td>
<td>42.6</td>
<td>48.4</td>
<td>48.8</td>
<td>54.0</td>
<td>41.7</td>
<td>46.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ca</td>
<td>0.139</td>
<td>0.131</td>
<td>0.110</td>
<td>0.122</td>
<td>0.0987</td>
<td>0.250</td>
<td>4.74</td>
<td>0.0766</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ti</td>
<td>0.381</td>
<td>0.530</td>
<td>0.482</td>
<td>0.539</td>
<td>0.486</td>
<td>0.540</td>
<td>0.377</td>
<td>0.455</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>56.3</td>
<td>76.0</td>
<td>68.3</td>
<td>87.6</td>
<td>87.2</td>
<td>78.4</td>
<td>54.9</td>
<td>73.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cr</td>
<td>60.1</td>
<td>94.3</td>
<td>71.6</td>
<td>94.8</td>
<td>90.5</td>
<td>82.8</td>
<td>43.3</td>
<td>97.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Co</td>
<td>48.9</td>
<td>36.4</td>
<td>47.9</td>
<td>73.4</td>
<td>43.1</td>
<td>67.6</td>
<td>24.6</td>
<td>62.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ni</td>
<td>32.6</td>
<td>98.9</td>
<td>50.1</td>
<td>38.6</td>
<td>43.1</td>
<td>66.9</td>
<td>20.7</td>
<td>42.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cu</td>
<td>12.8</td>
<td>17.1</td>
<td>19.8</td>
<td>32.2</td>
<td>23.7</td>
<td>19.8</td>
<td>10.2</td>
<td>36.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zn</td>
<td>213</td>
<td>166</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>78.0</td>
<td>124</td>
<td>157</td>
<td>58.5</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ga</td>
<td>32.1</td>
<td>38.5</td>
<td>36.2</td>
<td>36.8</td>
<td>35.7</td>
<td>36.9</td>
<td>37.2</td>
<td>68.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ge</td>
<td>0.440</td>
<td>0.561</td>
<td>0.483</td>
<td>0.518</td>
<td>0.471</td>
<td>0.983</td>
<td>0.358</td>
<td>0.378</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As</td>
<td>2.80</td>
<td>3.78</td>
<td>2.88</td>
<td>4.65</td>
<td>3.60</td>
<td>6.62</td>
<td>1.58</td>
<td>3.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rb</td>
<td>68.2</td>
<td>80.1</td>
<td>77.4</td>
<td>81.4</td>
<td>77.1</td>
<td>82.1</td>
<td>65.0</td>
<td>68.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sr</td>
<td>54.7</td>
<td>56.0</td>
<td>45.0</td>
<td>49.7</td>
<td>50.8</td>
<td>68.5</td>
<td>137</td>
<td>54.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>14.0</td>
<td>11.3</td>
<td>10.1</td>
<td>10.3</td>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>84.1</td>
<td>9.48</td>
<td>7.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zr</td>
<td>46.0</td>
<td>62.3</td>
<td>57.7</td>
<td>66.9</td>
<td>58.4</td>
<td>56.2</td>
<td>48.8</td>
<td>51.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zr</td>
<td>44.9</td>
<td>59.9</td>
<td>55.4</td>
<td>64.2</td>
<td>56.7</td>
<td>54.4</td>
<td>47.4</td>
<td>49.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nb</td>
<td>5.00</td>
<td>7.52</td>
<td>6.74</td>
<td>7.34</td>
<td>6.75</td>
<td>7.42</td>
<td>5.22</td>
<td>6.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mo</td>
<td>5.12</td>
<td>2.21</td>
<td>6.15</td>
<td>5.99*</td>
<td>8.04*</td>
<td>1.42</td>
<td>3.17</td>
<td>4.69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cd</td>
<td>0.286</td>
<td>0.069</td>
<td>0.447</td>
<td>0.141</td>
<td>0.129</td>
<td>0.0584</td>
<td>0.0568</td>
<td>0.118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sn</td>
<td>1.96</td>
<td>2.06</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>1.89</td>
<td>1.91</td>
<td>1.96</td>
<td>1.80</td>
<td>2.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sb</td>
<td>7.33</td>
<td>5.85</td>
<td>6.33</td>
<td>6.35</td>
<td>7.39</td>
<td>6.09</td>
<td>4.72</td>
<td>6.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ba</td>
<td>472</td>
<td>547</td>
<td>521</td>
<td>505</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>514</td>
<td>594</td>
<td>1210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>La</td>
<td>11.8</td>
<td>9.759</td>
<td>11.8</td>
<td>12.9</td>
<td>16.2</td>
<td>63.5</td>
<td>11.1</td>
<td>9.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ce</td>
<td>22.5</td>
<td>19.7</td>
<td>21.5</td>
<td>24.0</td>
<td>31.0</td>
<td>197</td>
<td>23.3</td>
<td>14.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pr</td>
<td>3.27</td>
<td>2.90</td>
<td>3.17</td>
<td>3.15</td>
<td>4.24</td>
<td>30.3</td>
<td>2.82</td>
<td>2.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nd</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>11.5</td>
<td>12.1</td>
<td>11.6</td>
<td>16.5</td>
<td>126</td>
<td>10.7</td>
<td>8.136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sm</td>
<td>2.50</td>
<td>2.26</td>
<td>2.32</td>
<td>2.22</td>
<td>3.60</td>
<td>26.1</td>
<td>2.15</td>
<td>1.69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eu</td>
<td>0.594</td>
<td>0.562</td>
<td>0.530</td>
<td>0.527</td>
<td>0.860</td>
<td>5.95</td>
<td>0.540</td>
<td>0.475</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eu</td>
<td>0.642</td>
<td>0.615</td>
<td>0.599</td>
<td>0.575</td>
<td>0.921</td>
<td>6.00</td>
<td>0.608</td>
<td>0.594</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gd</td>
<td>2.44</td>
<td>2.15</td>
<td>2.06</td>
<td>1.96</td>
<td>3.19</td>
<td>23.2</td>
<td>2.03</td>
<td>1.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tb</td>
<td>0.347</td>
<td>0.311</td>
<td>0.285</td>
<td>0.276</td>
<td>0.456</td>
<td>3.17</td>
<td>0.284</td>
<td>0.196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dy</td>
<td>2.07</td>
<td>1.87</td>
<td>1.69</td>
<td>1.67</td>
<td>2.68</td>
<td>17.0</td>
<td>1.69</td>
<td>1.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ho</td>
<td>0.429</td>
<td>0.394</td>
<td>0.346</td>
<td>0.354</td>
<td>0.537</td>
<td>3.02</td>
<td>0.337</td>
<td>0.250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Er</td>
<td>1.27</td>
<td>1.22</td>
<td>1.08</td>
<td>1.14</td>
<td>1.60</td>
<td>7.62</td>
<td>0.977</td>
<td>0.812</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tm</td>
<td>0.177</td>
<td>0.190</td>
<td>0.167</td>
<td>0.179</td>
<td>0.241</td>
<td>0.932</td>
<td>0.146</td>
<td>0.128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yb</td>
<td>1.13</td>
<td>1.31</td>
<td>1.10</td>
<td>1.28</td>
<td>1.57</td>
<td>5.45</td>
<td>0.975</td>
<td>0.906</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lu</td>
<td>0.151</td>
<td>0.192</td>
<td>0.168</td>
<td>0.191</td>
<td>0.235</td>
<td>0.706</td>
<td>0.144</td>
<td>0.142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hf</td>
<td>1.36</td>
<td>1.80</td>
<td>1.62</td>
<td>1.91</td>
<td>1.67</td>
<td>1.71</td>
<td>1.39</td>
<td>1.39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ti</td>
<td>0.594</td>
<td>0.602</td>
<td>0.720</td>
<td>0.693</td>
<td>0.693</td>
<td>0.639</td>
<td>0.562</td>
<td>0.871</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pb</td>
<td>9.39</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>14.4</td>
<td>12.7</td>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>13.0</td>
<td>8.25</td>
<td>12.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Th</td>
<td>5.53</td>
<td>7.98</td>
<td>7.45</td>
<td>8.33</td>
<td>7.04</td>
<td>8.15</td>
<td>5.72</td>
<td>6.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>2.35</td>
<td>2.15</td>
<td>3.07</td>
<td>3.63</td>
<td>4.46</td>
<td>2.05</td>
<td>2.05</td>
<td>2.61</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ICP-MS results for Kawau-1A

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>KAWAU-1A 25/4</th>
<th>KAWAU-1A 22/4</th>
<th>KAWAU-1A 21/4</th>
<th>KAWAU-1A 20/4</th>
<th>KAWAU-1A 19/4</th>
<th>KAWAU-1A 18/4</th>
<th>KAWAU-1A 17/4</th>
<th>KAWAU-1A 16/4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ti</td>
<td>852</td>
<td>2392</td>
<td>1897</td>
<td>5662</td>
<td>5219</td>
<td>4554</td>
<td>2883</td>
<td>2565</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>18.9</td>
<td>43.9</td>
<td>34.3</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>86.2</td>
<td>67.3</td>
<td>43.4</td>
<td>36.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cr</td>
<td>31.6</td>
<td>56.8</td>
<td>43.6</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>78.2</td>
<td>71.7</td>
<td>67.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mn</td>
<td>26.0</td>
<td>44.6</td>
<td>41.0</td>
<td>111</td>
<td>109</td>
<td>63.8</td>
<td>30.5</td>
<td>29.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Co</td>
<td>7.98</td>
<td>23.63</td>
<td>7.55</td>
<td>61.8</td>
<td>20.1</td>
<td>9.7</td>
<td>10.86</td>
<td>5.79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As</td>
<td>2.11</td>
<td>2.76</td>
<td>1.74</td>
<td>7.49</td>
<td>6.14</td>
<td>2.23</td>
<td>2.49</td>
<td>1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Se</td>
<td>0.277</td>
<td>0.213</td>
<td>0.158</td>
<td>0.735</td>
<td>0.657</td>
<td>0.300</td>
<td>0.219</td>
<td>0.190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rb</td>
<td>15.5</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>37.7</td>
<td>78.1</td>
<td>74.3</td>
<td>62.8</td>
<td>46.6</td>
<td>41.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sr</td>
<td>87.9</td>
<td>254</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>187</td>
<td>226</td>
<td>119</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>46.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>3.52</td>
<td>7.71</td>
<td>5.41</td>
<td>17.5</td>
<td>18.1</td>
<td>10.2</td>
<td>7.06</td>
<td>7.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zr</td>
<td>10.7</td>
<td>28.4</td>
<td>20.9</td>
<td>63.2</td>
<td>59.8</td>
<td>57.7</td>
<td>34.9</td>
<td>28.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zr</td>
<td>10.7</td>
<td>28.7</td>
<td>20.8</td>
<td>63.9</td>
<td>60.1</td>
<td>56.9</td>
<td>34.4</td>
<td>28.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nb</td>
<td>1.90</td>
<td>4.79</td>
<td>3.89</td>
<td>9.16</td>
<td>8.74</td>
<td>7.49</td>
<td>6.11</td>
<td>5.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mo</td>
<td>4.11</td>
<td>8.19</td>
<td>5.82</td>
<td>25.0</td>
<td>38.2</td>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>8.71</td>
<td>6.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cd</td>
<td>0.724</td>
<td>0.228</td>
<td>0.200</td>
<td>0.543</td>
<td>0.486</td>
<td>0.302</td>
<td>0.202</td>
<td>0.150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sn</td>
<td>0.694</td>
<td>2.12</td>
<td>2.39</td>
<td>3.13</td>
<td>2.86</td>
<td>2.77</td>
<td>2.63</td>
<td>2.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sb</td>
<td>0.527</td>
<td>0.973</td>
<td>0.702</td>
<td>0.789</td>
<td>0.607</td>
<td>0.540</td>
<td>0.581</td>
<td>0.390</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hf</td>
<td>0.337</td>
<td>0.870</td>
<td>0.648</td>
<td>1.80</td>
<td>1.76</td>
<td>1.72</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>0.847</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>0.192</td>
<td>0.451</td>
<td>0.358</td>
<td>0.989</td>
<td>0.757</td>
<td>0.660</td>
<td>0.520</td>
<td>0.448</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>0.52</td>
<td>1.07</td>
<td>0.713</td>
<td>1.36</td>
<td>1.37</td>
<td>1.13</td>
<td>1.08</td>
<td>0.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ti</td>
<td>0.213</td>
<td>0.311</td>
<td>0.245</td>
<td>0.640</td>
<td>0.654</td>
<td>0.494</td>
<td>0.309</td>
<td>0.311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pb</td>
<td>38.3</td>
<td>53.4</td>
<td>16.0</td>
<td>38.8</td>
<td>17.1</td>
<td>20.9</td>
<td>48.6</td>
<td>12.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bi</td>
<td>0.158</td>
<td>0.402</td>
<td>0.276</td>
<td>0.496</td>
<td>0.467</td>
<td>0.350</td>
<td>0.332</td>
<td>0.300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Th</td>
<td>2.22</td>
<td>5.33</td>
<td>3.70</td>
<td>8.51</td>
<td>9.54</td>
<td>7.34</td>
<td>5.24</td>
<td>4.69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>2.24</td>
<td>2.79</td>
<td>2.46</td>
<td>8.47</td>
<td>9.36</td>
<td>5.42</td>
<td>3.66</td>
<td>2.55</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Appendix C
ICP-MS results for Pakaha-1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>PAKAHA-1</th>
<th>PAKAHA-1</th>
<th>PAKAHA-1</th>
<th>PAKAHA-1</th>
<th>PAKAHA-1</th>
<th>PAKAHA-1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ti</td>
<td>4525</td>
<td>5372</td>
<td>6614</td>
<td>3989</td>
<td>4827</td>
<td>3599</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>62.5</td>
<td>63.7</td>
<td>103</td>
<td>51.7</td>
<td>72.0</td>
<td>50.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cr</td>
<td>52.8</td>
<td>60.0</td>
<td>93.2</td>
<td>99.2</td>
<td>97.0</td>
<td>90.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mn</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>293</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>84.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Co</td>
<td>8.8</td>
<td>6.09</td>
<td>14.1</td>
<td>5.95</td>
<td>9.70</td>
<td>2.64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ni</td>
<td>25.9</td>
<td>23.4</td>
<td>52.9</td>
<td>34.5</td>
<td>35.1</td>
<td>26.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cu</td>
<td>25.6</td>
<td>13.4</td>
<td>21.3</td>
<td>20.0</td>
<td>15.8</td>
<td>14.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As</td>
<td>2.61</td>
<td>2.72</td>
<td>7.84</td>
<td>3.78</td>
<td>3.58</td>
<td>3.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Se</td>
<td>0.0995</td>
<td>0.199</td>
<td>0.447</td>
<td>0.285</td>
<td>0.267</td>
<td>0.280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rb</td>
<td>65.4</td>
<td>77.4</td>
<td>98.8</td>
<td>201</td>
<td>69.7</td>
<td>61.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sr</td>
<td>886</td>
<td>178</td>
<td>126</td>
<td>377</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>69.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>11.8</td>
<td>12.9</td>
<td>13.4</td>
<td>12.3</td>
<td>9.90</td>
<td>10.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zr</td>
<td>55.2</td>
<td>76.4</td>
<td>77.1</td>
<td>53.0</td>
<td>52.6</td>
<td>42.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zr</td>
<td>54.7</td>
<td>75.6</td>
<td>76.8</td>
<td>52.0</td>
<td>52.5</td>
<td>42.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nb</td>
<td>7.85</td>
<td>8.82</td>
<td>10.4</td>
<td>8.00</td>
<td>7.25</td>
<td>8.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mo</td>
<td>3.53</td>
<td>3.94</td>
<td>33.4</td>
<td>8.74</td>
<td>14.1</td>
<td>8.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cd</td>
<td>0.129</td>
<td>0.241</td>
<td>0.333</td>
<td>0.167</td>
<td>0.221</td>
<td>0.212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sn</td>
<td>3.33</td>
<td>3.39</td>
<td>3.85</td>
<td>3.93</td>
<td>2.40</td>
<td>2.71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sb</td>
<td>0.634</td>
<td>0.635</td>
<td>1.18</td>
<td>0.421</td>
<td>0.472</td>
<td>0.399</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hf</td>
<td>1.61</td>
<td>2.44</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>1.66</td>
<td>1.46</td>
<td>1.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>0.712</td>
<td>0.816</td>
<td>0.934</td>
<td>0.685</td>
<td>0.597</td>
<td>0.708</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>2.38</td>
<td>2.07</td>
<td>13.7</td>
<td>1.73</td>
<td>1.01</td>
<td>2.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tl</td>
<td>0.356</td>
<td>0.483</td>
<td>0.653</td>
<td>1.31</td>
<td>0.363</td>
<td>0.412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pb</td>
<td>37.7</td>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>22.0</td>
<td>38.8</td>
<td>14.4</td>
<td>13.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bi</td>
<td>0.407</td>
<td>0.275</td>
<td>0.663</td>
<td>0.310</td>
<td>0.396</td>
<td>0.362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Th</td>
<td>7.09</td>
<td>7.90</td>
<td>10.1</td>
<td>7.14</td>
<td>6.31</td>
<td>6.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>1.81</td>
<td>2.62</td>
<td>9.70</td>
<td>2.62</td>
<td>3.21</td>
<td>3.81</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Appendix C

CVI
## Table summarising trace metal variations

| Detrital component | Heavy mineral phases | Biological | Illite & illite clays | Fe-Mn oxides | Water depth | Organic Matter | Oxyhydroxides in W.C. | Precipitation of U salts | Chemical weathering | Reducing conditions | Enrichment | Reduction conditions | Enrichment | Reducing conditions | Oxynitrates | Pyrite | Atmospheric scavenging effects | Redfieldian cations | Other processes | Common salt |
|--------------------|----------------------|------------|----------------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|----------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|---------------------|
| Ti     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Al     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| K      |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Rb     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Th     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Ta     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Hf     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Nb     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Zr     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Ga     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Ba     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Ca     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| P      |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Mg     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Sr     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Si     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Ge     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Fe     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| S      |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Pb     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Bi     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Mn     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Co     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Ti     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Cd     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Cu     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| N      |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Zn     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Mo     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Re     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| As     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Cr     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| V      |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| U      |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Au     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Ag     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Se     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Sb     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Sn     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| W      |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Na     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Li     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Y      |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| La     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Ce     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Pr     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Nd     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Sm     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Eu     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Gd     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Tb     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Dy     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Ho     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Er     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Tm     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Yb     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |
| Lu     |         |            |                      |              |             |               |                      |                         |                      |                  |             |             |             |             |                |                |                    |                     |            |           |